



GROUP SPECIFICATION

## **Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Vi-Vnfm reference point - Interface and Information Model Specification**

### *Disclaimer*

---

The present document has been produced and approved by the Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) ETSI Industry Specification Group (ISG) and represents the views of those members who participated in this ISG.  
It does not necessarily represent the views of the entire ETSI membership.

---

**Reference**

RGS/NFV-IFA006ed541

---

**Keywords**configuration, management, MANO, network, NFV,  
virtualisation**ETSI**650 Route des Lucioles  
F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - APE 7112B  
Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la  
Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° w061004871

---

**Important notice**

The present document can be downloaded from the  
[ETSI Search & Browse Standards](#) application.

The present document may be made available in electronic versions and/or in print. The content of any electronic and/or print versions of the present document shall not be modified without the prior written authorization of ETSI. In case of any existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions and/or in print, the prevailing version of an ETSI deliverable is the one made publicly available in PDF format on [ETSI deliver](#) repository.

Users should be aware that the present document may be revised or have its status changed,  
this information is available in the [Milestones listing](#).

If you find errors in the present document, please send your comments to  
the relevant service listed under [Committee Support Staff](#).

If you find a security vulnerability in the present document, please report it through our  
[Coordinated Vulnerability Disclosure \(CVD\)](#) program.

---

**Notice of disclaimer & limitation of liability**

The information provided in the present deliverable is directed solely to professionals who have the appropriate degree of experience to understand and interpret its content in accordance with generally accepted engineering or other professional standard and applicable regulations.

No recommendation as to products and services or vendors is made or should be implied.

No representation or warranty is made that this deliverable is technically accurate or sufficient or conforms to any law and/or governmental rule and/or regulation and further, no representation or warranty is made of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose or against infringement of intellectual property rights.

In no event shall ETSI be held liable for loss of profits or any other incidental or consequential damages.

Any software contained in this deliverable is provided "AS IS" with no warranties, express or implied, including but not limited to, the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement of intellectual property rights and ETSI shall not be held liable in any event for any damages whatsoever (including, without limitation, damages for loss of profits, business interruption, loss of information, or any other pecuniary loss) arising out of or related to the use of or inability to use the software.

---

**Copyright Notification**

No part may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm except as authorized by written permission of ETSI.

The content of the PDF version shall not be modified without the written authorization of ETSI.

The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© ETSI 2026.  
All rights reserved.

# Contents

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Intellectual Property Rights .....  | 15 |
| Foreword.....   | 15 |
| Modal verbs terminology.....  | 15 |
| 1 Scope .....   | 16 |
| 2 References .....  | 16 |
| 2.1 Normative references .....  | 16 |
| 2.2 Informative references.....   | 16 |
| 3 Definition of terms, symbols and abbreviations.....   | 17 |
| 3.1 Terms.....  | 17 |
| 3.2 Symbols.....  | 17 |
| 3.3 Abbreviations .....   | 18 |
| 4 Overview of interfaces and information models associated to the Vi-Vnfm reference point ..... | 18 |
| 4.1 Introduction .....  | 18 |
| 4.2 Relation to other NFV group specifications .....  | 19 |
| 4.3 Conventions.....  | 19 |
| 5 Reference point and interface requirements .....  | 20 |
| 5.1 Introduction .....  | 20 |
| 5.2 Vi-Vnfm Reference Point Requirements.....   | 20 |
| 5.3 Interface Requirements.....   | 21 |
| 5.3.1 Software Image Management interface requirements.....                                     | 21 |
| 5.3.2 Virtualised Resources Information Management interface requirements .....                 | 21 |
| 5.3.3 Virtualised Resources Management interface requirements.....                              | 21 |
| 5.3.4 Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface requirements .....                 | 22 |
| 5.3.5 Virtualised Resources Change Notification interface requirements .....                    | 22 |
| 5.3.6 Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification interface requirements .....        | 23 |
| 5.3.7 Virtualised Resources Quota Management interface requirements .....                       | 23 |
| 5.3.8 Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface requirements.....                  | 23 |
| 5.3.9 Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface requirements.....                        | 24 |
| 5.3.10 Policy Management interface requirements.....  | 25 |
| 6 VNFM exposed interfaces.....  | 25 |
| 7 VIM exposed interfaces.....   | 25 |
| 7.1 Introduction .....  | 25 |
| 7.2 Software Image Management Interface.....  | 26 |
| 7.2.1 Description.....  | 26 |
| 7.2.2 Query Images operation.....   | 26 |
| 7.2.2.1 Description .....   | 26 |
| 7.2.2.2 Input parameters.....   | 26 |
| 7.2.2.3 Output parameters .....   | 26 |
| 7.2.2.4 Operation results .....   | 26 |
| 7.2.3 Query Image operation .....   | 27 |
| 7.2.3.1 Description .....   | 27 |
| 7.2.3.2 Input parameters.....   | 27 |
| 7.2.3.3 Output parameters .....   | 27 |
| 7.2.3.4 Operation results .....   | 27 |
| 7.3 Virtualised Compute Interfaces.....   | 27 |
| 7.3.1 Virtualised Compute Resources Management Interface.....                                   | 27 |
| 7.3.1.1 Description .....   | 27 |
| 7.3.1.2 Allocate Virtualised Compute Resource operation .....                                   | 28 |
| 7.3.1.2.1 Description .....   | 28 |
| 7.3.1.2.2 Input parameters .....  | 28 |
| 7.3.1.2.3 Output parameters .....   | 29 |
| 7.3.1.2.4 Operation results.....  | 29 |

|            |  |    |
|------------|--|----|
| 7.3.1.3    | Query Virtualised Compute Resource operation.....  | 29 |
| 7.3.1.3.1  | Description .....  | 29 |
| 7.3.1.3.2  | Input parameters .....   | 29 |
| 7.3.1.3.3  | Output parameters .....  | 30 |
| 7.3.1.3.4  | Operation results.....   | 30 |
| 7.3.1.4    | Update Virtualised Compute Resource operation .....  | 30 |
| 7.3.1.4.1  | Description .....  | 30 |
| 7.3.1.4.2  | Input parameters .....   | 30 |
| 7.3.1.4.3  | Output parameters .....  | 31 |
| 7.3.1.4.4  | Operation results.....   | 31 |
| 7.3.1.5    | Terminate Virtualised Compute Resource operation .....   | 31 |
| 7.3.1.5.1  | Description .....  | 31 |
| 7.3.1.5.2  | Input parameters .....   | 32 |
| 7.3.1.5.3  | Output parameters .....  | 32 |
| 7.3.1.5.4  | Operation results.....   | 32 |
| 7.3.1.6    | Operate Virtualised Compute Resource operation .....   | 32 |
| 7.3.1.6.1  | Description .....  | 32 |
| 7.3.1.6.2  | Input parameters .....   | 32 |
| 7.3.1.6.3  | Output parameters .....  | 33 |
| 7.3.1.6.4  | Operation results.....   | 33 |
| 7.3.1.7    | Scale Virtualised Compute Resource operation .....   | 33 |
| 7.3.1.7.1  | Description .....  | 33 |
| 7.3.1.7.2  | Input parameters .....   | 34 |
| 7.3.1.7.3  | Output parameters .....  | 34 |
| 7.3.1.7.4  | Operation results.....   | 34 |
| 7.3.1.8    | Migrate Virtualised Compute Resource operation .....   | 34 |
| 7.3.1.8.1  | Description .....  | 34 |
| 7.3.1.8.2  | Input parameters .....   | 35 |
| 7.3.1.8.3  | Output parameters .....  | 35 |
| 7.3.1.8.4  | Operation results.....   | 35 |
| 7.3.1.9    | Create Virtualised Compute Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation ..... | 35 |
| 7.3.1.9.1  | Description .....  | 35 |
| 7.3.1.9.2  | Input parameters .....   | 36 |
| 7.3.1.9.3  | Output parameters .....  | 36 |
| 7.3.1.9.4  | Operation results.....   | 36 |
| 7.3.1.10   | Attach Virtualised Storage Resource operation .....  | 36 |
| 7.3.1.10.1 | Description .....  | 36 |
| 7.3.1.10.2 | Input parameters .....   | 37 |
| 7.3.1.10.3 | Output parameters .....  | 37 |
| 7.3.1.10.4 | Operation results.....   | 37 |
| 7.3.1.11   | Detach Virtualised Storage Resource operation.....   | 37 |
| 7.3.1.11.1 | Description .....  | 37 |
| 7.3.1.11.2 | Input parameters .....   | 37 |
| 7.3.1.11.3 | Output parameters .....  | 38 |
| 7.3.1.11.4 | Operation results.....   | 38 |
| 7.3.2      | Virtualised Compute Resources Change Notification Interface .....                              | 38 |
| 7.3.2.1    | Description .....  | 38 |
| 7.3.2.2    | Subscribe operation.....   | 38 |
| 7.3.2.2.1  | Description .....  | 38 |
| 7.3.2.2.2  | Input parameters .....   | 38 |
| 7.3.2.2.3  | Output parameters .....  | 38 |
| 7.3.2.2.4  | Operation results.....   | 39 |
| 7.3.2.3    | Notify operation .....   | 39 |
| 7.3.2.3.1  | Description .....  | 39 |
| 7.3.3      | Virtualised Compute Resources Information Management Interface.....                            | 39 |
| 7.3.3.1    | Description .....  | 39 |
| 7.3.3.2    | Subscribe operation.....   | 39 |
| 7.3.3.2.1  | Description .....  | 39 |
| 7.3.3.2.2  | Input parameters .....   | 40 |
| 7.3.3.2.3  | Output parameters .....  | 40 |
| 7.3.3.2.4  | Operation results.....   | 40 |
| 7.3.3.3    | Notify operation .....   | 40 |

|           |   |    |
|-----------|---|----|
| 7.3.3.3.1 | Description .....   | 40 |
| 7.3.3.4   | Query Virtualised Compute Resource Information operation.....                                 | 40 |
| 7.3.3.4.1 | Description .....   | 40 |
| 7.3.3.4.2 | Input parameters .....  | 41 |
| 7.3.3.4.3 | Output parameters .....   | 41 |
| 7.3.3.4.4 | Operation results.....  | 41 |
| 7.3.4     | Virtualised Compute Flavour Management Interface.....   | 41 |
| 7.3.4.1   | Introduction.....   | 41 |
| 7.3.4.2   | Create Compute Flavour operation .....  | 41 |
| 7.3.4.2.1 | Description .....   | 41 |
| 7.3.4.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 42 |
| 7.3.4.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 42 |
| 7.3.4.2.4 | Operation results.....  | 42 |
| 7.3.4.3   | Query Compute Flavour operation.....  | 42 |
| 7.3.4.3.1 | Description .....   | 42 |
| 7.3.4.3.2 | Input parameters .....  | 42 |
| 7.3.4.3.3 | Output parameters .....   | 43 |
| 7.3.4.3.4 | Operation results.....  | 43 |
| 7.3.4.4   | Delete Compute Flavour operation .....  | 43 |
| 7.3.4.4.1 | Description .....   | 43 |
| 7.3.4.4.2 | Input parameters .....  | 43 |
| 7.3.4.4.3 | Output parameters .....   | 43 |
| 7.3.4.4.4 | Operation results.....  | 43 |
| 7.4       | Virtualised Network Interfaces.....   | 44 |
| 7.4.1     | Virtualised Network Resources Management Interface.....                                       | 44 |
| 7.4.1.1   | Description .....   | 44 |
| 7.4.1.2   | Allocate Virtualised Network Resource operation.....  | 44 |
| 7.4.1.2.1 | Description .....   | 44 |
| 7.4.1.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 44 |
| 7.4.1.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 45 |
| 7.4.1.2.4 | Operation results.....  | 45 |
| 7.4.1.3   | Query Virtualised Network Resource operation .....  | 46 |
| 7.4.1.3.1 | Description .....   | 46 |
| 7.4.1.3.2 | Input parameters .....  | 46 |
| 7.4.1.3.3 | Output parameters .....   | 46 |
| 7.4.1.3.4 | Operation results.....  | 46 |
| 7.4.1.4   | Update Virtualised Network Resource operation.....  | 46 |
| 7.4.1.4.1 | Description .....   | 46 |
| 7.4.1.4.2 | Input parameters .....  | 47 |
| 7.4.1.4.3 | Output parameters .....   | 47 |
| 7.4.1.4.4 | Operation results.....  | 48 |
| 7.4.1.5   | Terminate Virtualised Network Resource operation.....   | 48 |
| 7.4.1.5.1 | Description .....   | 48 |
| 7.4.1.5.2 | Input parameters .....  | 48 |
| 7.4.1.5.3 | Output parameters .....   | 48 |
| 7.4.1.5.4 | Operation results.....  | 48 |
| 7.4.1.6   | Create Virtualised Network Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation..... | 49 |
| 7.4.1.6.1 | Description .....   | 49 |
| 7.4.1.6.2 | Input parameters .....  | 49 |
| 7.4.1.6.3 | Output parameters .....   | 49 |
| 7.4.1.6.4 | Operation results.....  | 49 |
| 7.4.2     | Virtualised Network Resources Change Notification Interface.....                              | 50 |
| 7.4.2.1   | Description .....   | 50 |
| 7.4.2.2   | Subscribe operation.....  | 50 |
| 7.4.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 50 |
| 7.4.2.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 50 |
| 7.4.2.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 50 |
| 7.4.2.2.4 | Operation results.....  | 50 |
| 7.4.2.3   | Notify operation .....  | 50 |
| 7.4.2.3.1 | Description .....   | 50 |
| 7.4.3     | Virtualised Network Resources Information Management Interface.....                           | 51 |
| 7.4.3.1   | Description.....  | 51 |

|           |   |    |
|-----------|---|----|
| 7.4.3.2   | Subscribe operation.....  | 51 |
| 7.4.3.2.1 | Description .....   | 51 |
| 7.4.3.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 51 |
| 7.4.3.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 52 |
| 7.4.3.2.4 | Operation results.....  | 52 |
| 7.4.3.3   | Notify operation .....  | 52 |
| 7.4.3.3.1 | Description .....   | 52 |
| 7.4.3.4   | Query Virtualised Network Resource Information operation .....                                | 52 |
| 7.4.3.4.1 | Description .....   | 52 |
| 7.4.3.4.2 | Input parameters .....  | 52 |
| 7.4.3.4.3 | Output parameters .....   | 53 |
| 7.4.3.4.4 | Operation results.....  | 53 |
| 7.5       | Virtualised Storage Interfaces .....  | 53 |
| 7.5.1     | Virtualised Storage Resources Management Interface .....                                      | 53 |
| 7.5.1.1   | Description .....   | 53 |
| 7.5.1.2   | Allocate Virtualised Storage Resource operation.....  | 53 |
| 7.5.1.2.1 | Description .....   | 53 |
| 7.5.1.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 53 |
| 7.5.1.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 54 |
| 7.5.1.2.4 | Operation results.....  | 54 |
| 7.5.1.3   | Query Virtualised Storage Resource operation .....  | 54 |
| 7.5.1.3.1 | Description .....   | 54 |
| 7.5.1.3.2 | Input parameters .....  | 55 |
| 7.5.1.3.3 | Output parameters .....   | 55 |
| 7.5.1.3.4 | Operation results.....  | 55 |
| 7.5.1.4   | Update Virtualised Storage Resource operation.....  | 55 |
| 7.5.1.4.1 | Description .....   | 55 |
| 7.5.1.4.2 | Input parameters .....  | 55 |
| 7.5.1.4.3 | Output parameters .....   | 56 |
| 7.5.1.4.4 | Operation results.....  | 56 |
| 7.5.1.5   | Terminate Virtualised Storage Resource operation.....   | 56 |
| 7.5.1.5.1 | Description .....   | 56 |
| 7.5.1.5.2 | Input parameters .....  | 56 |
| 7.5.1.5.3 | Output parameters .....   | 57 |
| 7.5.1.5.4 | Operation results.....  | 57 |
| 7.5.1.6   | Operate Virtualised Storage Resource operation .....  | 57 |
| 7.5.1.6.1 | Description .....   | 57 |
| 7.5.1.6.2 | Input parameters .....  | 57 |
| 7.5.1.6.3 | Output parameters .....   | 57 |
| 7.5.1.6.4 | Operation results.....  | 58 |
| 7.5.1.7   | Scale Virtualised Storage Resource operation .....  | 58 |
| 7.5.1.7.1 | Description .....   | 58 |
| 7.5.1.7.2 | Input parameters .....  | 58 |
| 7.5.1.7.3 | Output parameters .....   | 58 |
| 7.5.1.7.4 | Operation results.....  | 58 |
| 7.5.1.8   | Migrate Virtualised Storage Resource operation .....  | 59 |
| 7.5.1.8.1 | Description .....   | 59 |
| 7.5.1.8.2 | Input parameters .....  | 59 |
| 7.5.1.8.3 | Output parameters .....   | 59 |
| 7.5.1.8.4 | Operation results.....  | 59 |
| 7.5.1.9   | Create Virtualised Storage Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation..... | 60 |
| 7.5.1.9.1 | Description .....   | 60 |
| 7.5.1.9.2 | Input parameters .....  | 60 |
| 7.5.1.9.3 | Output parameters .....   | 60 |
| 7.5.1.9.4 | Operation results.....  | 60 |
| 7.5.2     | Virtualised Storage Resources Change Notification Interface.....                              | 61 |
| 7.5.2.1   | Description .....   | 61 |
| 7.5.2.2   | Subscribe operation.....  | 61 |
| 7.5.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 61 |
| 7.5.2.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 61 |
| 7.5.2.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 61 |
| 7.5.2.2.4 | Operation results.....  | 61 |

|           |  |    |
|-----------|--|----|
| 7.5.2.3   | Notify operation .....   | 61 |
| 7.5.2.3.1 | Description .....  | 61 |
| 7.5.3     | Virtualised Storage Resources Information Management Interface ..... | 62 |
| 7.5.3.1   | Description .....  | 62 |
| 7.5.3.2   | Subscribe operation .....  | 62 |
| 7.5.3.2.1 | Description .....  | 62 |
| 7.5.3.2.2 | Input parameters .....   | 62 |
| 7.5.3.2.3 | Output parameters .....  | 63 |
| 7.5.3.2.4 | Operation results .....  | 63 |
| 7.5.3.3   | Notify operation .....   | 63 |
| 7.5.3.3.1 | Description .....  | 63 |
| 7.5.3.4   | Query Virtualised Storage Resources Information operation .....      | 63 |
| 7.5.3.4.1 | Description .....  | 63 |
| 7.5.3.4.2 | Input parameters .....   | 63 |
| 7.5.3.4.3 | Output parameters .....  | 64 |
| 7.5.3.4.4 | Operation results .....  | 64 |
| 7.6       | Virtualised Resources Fault Management Interface .....               | 64 |
| 7.6.1     | Description .....  | 64 |
| 7.6.2     | Subscribe operation .....  | 64 |
| 7.6.2.1   | Description .....  | 64 |
| 7.6.2.2   | Input parameters .....   | 65 |
| 7.6.2.3   | Output parameters .....  | 65 |
| 7.6.2.4   | Operation results .....  | 65 |
| 7.6.3     | Notify operation .....   | 65 |
| 7.6.3.1   | Description .....  | 65 |
| 7.6.4     | Get Alarm List operation .....                                       | 65 |
| 7.6.4.1   | Description .....  | 65 |
| 7.6.4.2   | Input parameters .....   | 66 |
| 7.6.4.3   | Output parameters .....  | 66 |
| 7.6.4.4   | Operation results .....  | 66 |
| 7.7       | Virtualised Resources Performance Management Interface .....         | 66 |
| 7.7.1     | Description .....  | 66 |
| 7.7.2     | Create PM Job operation .....  | 67 |
| 7.7.2.1   | Description .....  | 67 |
| 7.7.2.2   | Input parameters .....   | 67 |
| 7.7.2.3   | Output parameters .....  | 68 |
| 7.7.2.4   | Operation results .....  | 68 |
| 7.7.3     | Query PM Job operation .....   | 68 |
| 7.7.3.1   | Description .....  | 68 |
| 7.7.3.2   | Input parameters .....   | 68 |
| 7.7.3.3   | Output parameters .....  | 68 |
| 7.7.3.4   | Operation results .....  | 68 |
| 7.7.4     | Delete PM Jobs operation .....                                       | 69 |
| 7.7.4.1   | Description .....  | 69 |
| 7.7.4.2   | Input parameters .....   | 69 |
| 7.7.4.3   | Output parameters .....  | 69 |
| 7.7.4.4   | Operation results .....  | 69 |
| 7.7.5     | Subscribe operation .....  | 69 |
| 7.7.5.1   | Description .....  | 69 |
| 7.7.5.2   | Input parameters .....   | 70 |
| 7.7.5.3   | Output parameters .....  | 70 |
| 7.7.5.4   | Operation results .....  | 70 |
| 7.7.6     | Notify operation .....   | 70 |
| 7.7.6.1   | Description .....  | 70 |
| 7.7.7     | Create Threshold operation .....                                     | 70 |
| 7.7.7.1   | Description .....  | 70 |
| 7.7.7.2   | Input parameters .....   | 71 |
| 7.7.7.3   | Output parameters .....  | 71 |
| 7.7.7.4   | Operation results .....  | 71 |
| 7.7.8     | Query Threshold operation .....                                      | 71 |
| 7.7.8.1   | Description .....  | 71 |
| 7.7.8.2   | Input parameters .....   | 72 |

|           |   |    |
|-----------|---|----|
| 7.7.8.3   | Output parameters .....   | 72 |
| 7.7.8.4   | Operation results .....   | 72 |
| 7.7.9     | Delete Thresholds operation .....                                     | 72 |
| 7.7.9.1   | Description .....   | 72 |
| 7.7.9.2   | Input parameters .....  | 72 |
| 7.7.9.3   | Output parameters .....   | 72 |
| 7.7.9.4   | Operation results .....   | 73 |
| 7.8       | Virtualised Resource Reservation Interfaces .....                     | 73 |
| 7.8.1     | Virtualised Compute Resources Reservation Management Interface .....  | 73 |
| 7.8.1.1   | Description .....   | 73 |
| 7.8.1.2   | Query Compute Resource Reservation operation .....                    | 73 |
| 7.8.1.2.1 | Description .....   | 73 |
| 7.8.1.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 73 |
| 7.8.1.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 73 |
| 7.8.1.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 74 |
| 7.8.2     | Virtualised Network Resources Reservation Management Interface .....  | 74 |
| 7.8.2.1   | Description .....   | 74 |
| 7.8.2.2   | Query Network Resource Reservation operation .....                    | 74 |
| 7.8.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 74 |
| 7.8.2.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 74 |
| 7.8.2.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 74 |
| 7.8.2.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 75 |
| 7.8.3     | Virtualised Storage Resources Reservation Management Interface .....  | 75 |
| 7.8.3.1   | Description .....   | 75 |
| 7.8.3.2   | Query Storage Resource Reservation operation .....                    | 75 |
| 7.8.3.2.1 | Description .....   | 75 |
| 7.8.3.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 75 |
| 7.8.3.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 75 |
| 7.8.3.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 76 |
| 7.8.4     | Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification Interface ..... | 76 |
| 7.8.4.1   | Description .....   | 76 |
| 7.8.4.2   | Subscribe operation .....   | 76 |
| 7.8.4.2.1 | Description .....   | 76 |
| 7.8.4.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 76 |
| 7.8.4.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 76 |
| 7.8.4.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 77 |
| 7.8.4.3   | Notify operation .....  | 77 |
| 7.8.4.3.1 | Description .....   | 77 |
| 7.9       | Virtualised Resource Quota Interfaces .....                           | 77 |
| 7.9.1     | Virtualised Compute Resources Quota Management Interface .....        | 77 |
| 7.9.1.1   | Description .....   | 77 |
| 7.9.1.2   | Query Compute Resource Quota operation .....                          | 77 |
| 7.9.1.2.1 | Description .....   | 77 |
| 7.9.1.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 77 |
| 7.9.1.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 78 |
| 7.9.1.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 78 |
| 7.9.2     | Virtualised Network Resources Quota Management Interface .....        | 78 |
| 7.9.2.1   | Description .....   | 78 |
| 7.9.2.2   | Query Network Resource Quota operation .....                          | 78 |
| 7.9.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 78 |
| 7.9.2.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 78 |
| 7.9.2.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 79 |
| 7.9.2.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 79 |
| 7.9.3     | Virtualised Storage Resources Quota Management Interface .....        | 79 |
| 7.9.3.1   | Description .....   | 79 |
| 7.9.3.2   | Query Storage Resource operation .....                                | 79 |
| 7.9.3.2.1 | Description .....   | 79 |
| 7.9.3.2.2 | Input parameters .....  | 79 |
| 7.9.3.2.3 | Output parameters .....   | 80 |
| 7.9.3.2.4 | Operation results .....   | 80 |
| 7.9.4     | Virtualised Resources Quota Change Notification Interface .....       | 80 |
| 7.9.4.1   | Description .....   | 80 |

|           |  |    |
|-----------|--|----|
| 7.9.4.2   | Subscribe operation .....  | 80 |
| 7.9.4.2.1 | Description .....  | 80 |
| 7.9.4.2.2 | Input parameters .....   | 80 |
| 7.9.4.2.3 | Output parameters .....  | 81 |
| 7.9.4.2.4 | Operation results .....  | 81 |
| 7.9.4.3   | Notify operation .....   | 81 |
| 7.9.4.3.1 | Description .....  | 81 |
| 7.10      | Policy Management Interface .....  | 81 |
| 7.10.1    | Description .....  | 81 |
| 7.10.2    | Transfer Policy operation .....  | 82 |
| 7.10.2.1  | Description .....  | 82 |
| 7.10.2.2  | Input parameters .....   | 82 |
| 7.10.2.3  | Output parameters .....  | 82 |
| 7.10.2.4  | Operation results .....  | 82 |
| 7.10.3    | Delete Policy operation .....  | 83 |
| 7.10.3.1  | Description .....  | 83 |
| 7.10.3.2  | Input parameters .....   | 83 |
| 7.10.3.3  | Output parameters .....  | 83 |
| 7.10.3.4  | Operation results .....  | 83 |
| 7.10.4    | Query Policy operation .....   | 83 |
| 7.10.4.1  | Description .....  | 83 |
| 7.10.4.2  | Input parameters .....   | 84 |
| 7.10.4.3  | Output parameters .....  | 84 |
| 7.10.4.4  | Operation results .....  | 84 |
| 7.10.5    | Activate Policy operation .....  | 84 |
| 7.10.5.1  | Description .....  | 84 |
| 7.10.5.2  | Input parameters .....   | 84 |
| 7.10.5.3  | Output parameters .....  | 85 |
| 7.10.5.4  | Operation results .....  | 85 |
| 7.10.6    | Deactivate Policy operation .....  | 85 |
| 7.10.6.1  | Description .....  | 85 |
| 7.10.6.2  | Input parameters .....   | 85 |
| 7.10.6.3  | Output parameters .....  | 85 |
| 7.10.6.4  | Operation results .....  | 86 |
| 7.10.7    | Subscribe operation .....  | 86 |
| 7.10.7.1  | Description .....  | 86 |
| 7.10.7.2  | Input parameters .....   | 86 |
| 7.10.7.3  | Output parameters .....  | 86 |
| 7.10.7.4  | Operation results .....  | 86 |
| 7.10.8    | Notify operation .....   | 87 |
| 7.10.8.1  | Description .....  | 87 |
| 7.10.9    | Terminate Subscription operation .....   | 87 |
| 7.10.9.1  | Description .....  | 87 |
| 7.10.9.2  | Input parameters .....   | 87 |
| 7.10.9.3  | Output parameters .....  | 87 |
| 7.10.9.4  | Operation results .....  | 87 |
| 7.10.10   | Query Subscription Info operation .....  | 88 |
| 7.10.10.1 | Description .....  | 88 |
| 7.10.10.2 | Input parameters .....   | 88 |
| 7.10.10.3 | Output parameters .....  | 88 |
| 7.10.10.4 | Operation results .....  | 88 |
| 8         | Information element exchanged .....  | 88 |
| 8.1       | Introduction .....   | 88 |
| 8.2       | Information elements related to software images .....  | 89 |
| 8.2.1     | Introduction .....   | 89 |
| 8.2.2     | SoftwareImageInformation information element .....   | 89 |
| 8.2.2.1   | Description .....  | 89 |
| 8.2.2.2   | Attributes .....   | 89 |
| 8.3       | Information elements and notifications related to Consumable Virtualised Resources Information ..... | 89 |
| 8.3.1     | Introduction .....   | 89 |
| 8.3.2     | InformationChangeNotification .....  | 89 |

|           |   |     |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 8.3.2.1   | Description .....   | 89  |
| 8.3.2.2   | Trigger conditions .....  | 89  |
| 8.3.2.3   | Attributes .....  | 90  |
| 8.3.3     | Information elements related to Virtual Compute Resource Information .....    | 90  |
| 8.3.3.1   | Introduction .....  | 90  |
| 8.3.3.2   | VirtualComputeResourceInformation information element .....                   | 90  |
| 8.3.3.2.1 | Description .....   | 90  |
| 8.3.3.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 90  |
| 8.3.3.3   | VirtualCpuResourceInformation information element .....                       | 91  |
| 8.3.3.3.1 | Description .....   | 91  |
| 8.3.3.3.2 | Attributes .....  | 91  |
| 8.3.3.4   | VirtualMemoryResourceInformation information element .....                    | 91  |
| 8.3.3.4.1 | Description .....   | 91  |
| 8.3.3.4.2 | Attributes .....  | 91  |
| 8.3.4     | VirtualStorageResourceInformation information element .....                   | 92  |
| 8.3.4.1   | Description .....   | 92  |
| 8.3.4.2   | Attributes .....  | 92  |
| 8.3.5     | VirtualNetworkResourceInformation information element .....                   | 92  |
| 8.3.5.1   | Description .....   | 92  |
| 8.3.5.2   | Attributes .....  | 92  |
| 8.4       | Information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources ..... | 93  |
| 8.4.1     | Introduction .....  | 93  |
| 8.4.2     | Information elements related to Virtual Compute Flavour .....                 | 93  |
| 8.4.2.1   | Introduction .....  | 93  |
| 8.4.2.2   | VirtualComputeFlavour information element .....                               | 93  |
| 8.4.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 93  |
| 8.4.2.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 93  |
| 8.4.2.3   | VirtualCpuData information element .....                                      | 94  |
| 8.4.2.3.1 | Description .....   | 94  |
| 8.4.2.3.2 | Attributes .....  | 94  |
| 8.4.2.4   | VirtualCpuPinningData information element format .....                        | 94  |
| 8.4.2.4.1 | Description .....   | 94  |
| 8.4.2.4.2 | Attributes .....  | 94  |
| 8.4.2.5   | VirtualMemoryData information element format .....                            | 95  |
| 8.4.2.5.1 | Description .....   | 95  |
| 8.4.2.5.2 | Attributes .....  | 95  |
| 8.4.2.6   | VirtualNetworkInterfaceData information element .....                         | 95  |
| 8.4.2.6.1 | Description .....   | 95  |
| 8.4.2.6.2 | Attributes .....  | 95  |
| 8.4.3     | Information elements related to Virtual Compute .....                         | 96  |
| 8.4.3.1   | Introduction .....  | 96  |
| 8.4.3.2   | VirtualCompute information element .....                                      | 96  |
| 8.4.3.2.1 | Description .....   | 96  |
| 8.4.3.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 96  |
| 8.4.3.3   | VirtualCpu information element format .....                                   | 97  |
| 8.4.3.3.1 | Description .....   | 97  |
| 8.4.3.3.2 | Attributes .....  | 97  |
| 8.4.3.4   | VirtualCpuPinning information element format .....                            | 98  |
| 8.4.3.4.1 | Description .....   | 98  |
| 8.4.3.4.2 | Attributes .....  | 98  |
| 8.4.3.5   | VirtualMemory information element format .....                                | 98  |
| 8.4.3.5.1 | Description .....   | 98  |
| 8.4.3.5.2 | Attributes .....  | 98  |
| 8.4.3.6   | VirtualNetworkInterface information element .....                             | 99  |
| 8.4.3.6.1 | Description .....   | 99  |
| 8.4.3.6.2 | Attributes .....  | 99  |
| 8.4.3.7   | VirtualInterfaceData information element .....                                | 100 |
| 8.4.3.7.1 | Description .....   | 100 |
| 8.4.3.7.2 | Attributes .....  | 100 |
| 8.4.4     | Information elements related to Virtual Network Data .....                    | 100 |
| 8.4.4.1   | Introduction .....  | 100 |
| 8.4.4.2   | VirtualNetworkData information element format .....                           | 100 |

|           |  |     |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 8.4.4.2.1 | Description .....  | 100 |
| 8.4.4.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 100 |
| 8.4.4.3   | NetworkQoS information element format .....                    | 101 |
| 8.4.4.3.1 | Description .....  | 101 |
| 8.4.4.3.2 | Attributes .....   | 101 |
| 8.4.4.4   | NetworkSubnetData information element .....                    | 102 |
| 8.4.4.4.1 | Description .....  | 102 |
| 8.4.4.4.2 | Attributes .....   | 102 |
| 8.4.4.5   | VirtualNetworkPortData information element .....               | 102 |
| 8.4.4.5.1 | Description .....  | 102 |
| 8.4.4.5.2 | Attributes .....   | 103 |
| 8.4.4.6   | VirtualTrunkData information element .....                     | 103 |
| 8.4.4.6.1 | Description .....  | 103 |
| 8.4.4.6.2 | Attributes .....   | 103 |
| 8.4.4.7   | TrunkSubport information element format .....                  | 104 |
| 8.4.4.7.1 | Description .....  | 104 |
| 8.4.4.7.2 | Attributes .....   | 104 |
| 8.4.4.8   | UpdateTrunkData information element .....                      | 104 |
| 8.4.4.8.1 | Description .....  | 104 |
| 8.4.4.8.2 | Attributes .....   | 104 |
| 8.4.5     | Information elements related to Virtual Network .....          | 105 |
| 8.4.5.1   | Introduction .....   | 105 |
| 8.4.5.2   | VirtualNetwork information element .....                       | 105 |
| 8.4.5.2.1 | Description .....  | 105 |
| 8.4.5.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 105 |
| 8.4.5.3   | NetworkSubnet information element .....                        | 106 |
| 8.4.5.3.1 | Description .....  | 106 |
| 8.4.5.3.2 | Attributes .....   | 106 |
| 8.4.5.4   | VirtualNetworkPort information element .....                   | 107 |
| 8.4.5.4.1 | Description .....  | 107 |
| 8.4.5.4.2 | Attributes .....   | 107 |
| 8.4.5.5   | VirtualTrunk information element .....                         | 108 |
| 8.4.5.5.1 | Description .....  | 108 |
| 8.4.5.5.2 | Attributes .....   | 108 |
| 8.4.6     | Information elements related to Virtual Storage Flavour .....  | 108 |
| 8.4.6.1   | Introduction .....   | 108 |
| 8.4.6.2   | VirtualStorageFlavour information element .....                | 108 |
| 8.4.6.2.1 | Description .....  | 108 |
| 8.4.6.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 108 |
| 8.4.6.3   | VirtualStorageData information element .....                   | 109 |
| 8.4.6.3.1 | Description .....  | 109 |
| 8.4.6.3.2 | Attributes .....   | 109 |
| 8.4.7     | Information elements related to Virtual Storage .....          | 109 |
| 8.4.7.1   | Introduction .....   | 109 |
| 8.4.7.2   | VirtualStorage information element .....                       | 109 |
| 8.4.7.2.1 | Description .....  | 109 |
| 8.4.7.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 109 |
| 8.4.8     | Information elements related to Affinity or AntiAffinity ..... | 110 |
| 8.4.8.1   | Introduction .....   | 110 |
| 8.4.8.2   | AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint information element .....     | 110 |
| 8.4.8.2.1 | Description .....  | 110 |
| 8.4.8.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 110 |
| 8.4.8.3   | AffinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList information element .....   | 111 |
| 8.4.8.3.1 | Description .....  | 111 |
| 8.4.8.3.2 | Attributes .....   | 112 |
| 8.4.9     | VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification .....                    | 112 |
| 8.4.9.1   | Description .....  | 112 |
| 8.4.9.2   | Trigger conditions .....                                       | 112 |
| 8.4.9.3   | Attributes .....   | 112 |
| 8.4.10    | UserData information element .....                             | 113 |
| 8.4.10.1  | Description .....  | 113 |
| 8.4.10.2  | Attributes .....   | 113 |

|           |  |     |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 8.4.11    | CertificateData information element.....   | 114 |
| 8.4.11.1  | Description .....  | 114 |
| 8.4.11.2  | Attributes.....  | 114 |
| 8.5       | Information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources Performance Management ..... | 114 |
| 8.5.1     | Introduction.....  | 114 |
| 8.5.2     | ObjectSelection information element.....   | 114 |
| 8.5.2.1   | Description .....  | 114 |
| 8.5.2.2   | Attributes.....  | 114 |
| 8.5.3     | PmJob information element .....  | 115 |
| 8.5.3.1   | Description .....  | 115 |
| 8.5.3.2   | Attributes.....  | 115 |
| 8.5.4     | Threshold information element.....   | 116 |
| 8.5.4.1   | Description .....  | 116 |
| 8.5.4.2   | Attributes.....  | 116 |
| 8.5.5     | PerformanceReport information element.....   | 117 |
| 8.5.5.1   | Description .....  | 117 |
| 8.5.5.2   | Attributes.....  | 117 |
| 8.5.6     | PerformanceReportEntry information element .....   | 117 |
| 8.5.6.1   | Description .....  | 117 |
| 8.5.6.2   | Attributes.....  | 117 |
| 8.5.7     | PerformanceValueEntry information element .....  | 118 |
| 8.5.7.1   | Description .....  | 118 |
| 8.5.7.2   | Attributes.....  | 118 |
| 8.5.8     | PerformanceInformationAvailableNotification .....  | 118 |
| 8.5.8.1   | Description .....  | 118 |
| 8.5.8.2   | Trigger Conditions .....   | 118 |
| 8.5.8.3   | Attributes.....  | 118 |
| 8.5.9     | ThresholdCrossedNotification .....   | 119 |
| 8.5.9.1   | Description .....  | 119 |
| 8.5.9.2   | Trigger Condition.....   | 119 |
| 8.5.9.3   | Attributes.....  | 119 |
| 8.6       | Information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources Fault Management .....       | 120 |
| 8.6.1     | Introduction.....  | 120 |
| 8.6.2     | AlarmNotification.....   | 120 |
| 8.6.2.1   | Description .....  | 120 |
| 8.6.2.2   | Trigger conditions .....   | 120 |
| 8.6.2.3   | Attributes.....  | 120 |
| 8.6.3     | AlarmClearedNotification .....   | 120 |
| 8.6.3.1   | Description .....  | 120 |
| 8.6.3.2   | Trigger conditions .....   | 120 |
| 8.6.3.3   | Attributes.....  | 120 |
| 8.6.4     | Alarm information element.....   | 121 |
| 8.6.4.1   | Description .....  | 121 |
| 8.6.4.2   | Attributes.....  | 121 |
| 8.7       | Information elements and notifications related to Reservation .....                                  | 122 |
| 8.7.1     | Introduction.....  | 122 |
| 8.7.2     | ReservedVirtualCompute information element .....   | 122 |
| 8.7.2.1   | Description .....  | 122 |
| 8.7.2.2   | Attributes.....  | 122 |
| 8.7.3     | Information elements related to Compute Pool Reservation .....                                       | 123 |
| 8.7.3.1   | Introduction.....  | 123 |
| 8.7.3.2   | ReservedComputePool information element.....   | 123 |
| 8.7.3.2.1 | Description .....  | 123 |
| 8.7.3.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 123 |
| 8.7.3.3   | ReservedVirtualComputeAttributes information element.....  | 124 |
| 8.7.3.3.1 | Description .....  | 124 |
| 8.7.3.3.2 | Attributes .....   | 124 |
| 8.7.4     | Information elements related to Network reservation.....   | 124 |
| 8.7.4.1   | Introduction.....  | 124 |
| 8.7.4.2   | ReservedVirtualNetwork information element .....   | 124 |
| 8.7.4.2.1 | Description .....  | 124 |
| 8.7.4.2.2 | Attributes .....   | 124 |

|           |   |     |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 8.7.4.3   | ReservedVirtualNetworkAttributes information element .....                | 125 |
| 8.7.4.3.1 | Description .....   | 125 |
| 8.7.4.3.2 | Attributes .....  | 125 |
| 8.7.4.4   | ReservedVirtualNetworkPort information element.....                       | 126 |
| 8.7.4.4.1 | Description .....   | 126 |
| 8.7.4.4.2 | Attributes .....  | 126 |
| 8.7.4.5   | ReservedPublicIpAddresses information element.....                        | 126 |
| 8.7.4.5.1 | Description .....   | 126 |
| 8.7.4.5.2 | Attributes .....  | 126 |
| 8.7.5     | Information elements related to Virtualisation Container Reservation..... | 126 |
| 8.7.5.1   | Introduction.....   | 126 |
| 8.7.5.2   | ReservedVirtualisationContainer information element.....                  | 127 |
| 8.7.5.2.1 | Description .....   | 127 |
| 8.7.5.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 127 |
| 8.7.6     | Information elements related to Storage reservation .....                 | 127 |
| 8.7.6.1   | Introduction.....   | 127 |
| 8.7.6.2   | ReservedVirtualStorage information element .....                          | 127 |
| 8.7.6.2.1 | Description .....   | 127 |
| 8.7.6.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 127 |
| 8.7.6.3   | ReservedStoragePool information element .....                             | 128 |
| 8.7.6.3.1 | Description .....   | 128 |
| 8.7.6.3.2 | Attributes .....  | 128 |
| 8.7.7     | VirtualisedResourceReservationChangeNotification .....                    | 128 |
| 8.7.7.1   | Description .....   | 128 |
| 8.7.7.2   | Trigger conditions .....  | 128 |
| 8.7.7.3   | Attributes.....   | 129 |
| 8.8       | Information elements and notifications related to Quota.....              | 129 |
| 8.8.1     | Introduction.....   | 129 |
| 8.8.2     | Information elements related to Compute Quota .....                       | 129 |
| 8.8.2.1   | Introduction.....   | 129 |
| 8.8.2.2   | VirtualComputeQuota information element.....                              | 129 |
| 8.8.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 129 |
| 8.8.2.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 129 |
| 8.8.3     | Information elements related to Network Quota.....                        | 130 |
| 8.8.3.1   | Introduction.....   | 130 |
| 8.8.3.2   | VirtualNetworkQuota information element .....                             | 130 |
| 8.8.3.2.1 | Description .....   | 130 |
| 8.8.3.2.2 | Attributes.....   | 130 |
| 8.8.4     | Information elements related to Storage Quota .....                       | 130 |
| 8.8.4.1   | Introduction.....   | 130 |
| 8.8.4.2   | VirtualStorageQuota information element .....                             | 130 |
| 8.8.4.2.1 | Description .....   | 130 |
| 8.8.4.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 130 |
| 8.8.5     | VirtualisedResourceQuotaChangeNotification.....                           | 131 |
| 8.8.5.1   | Description .....   | 131 |
| 8.8.5.2   | Trigger conditions .....  | 131 |
| 8.8.5.3   | Attributes.....   | 131 |
| 8.9       | Information elements and notifications related to Policy Management ..... | 131 |
| 8.9.1     | Introduction.....   | 131 |
| 8.9.2     | Information elements related to Policy Management Operations .....        | 132 |
| 8.9.2.1   | Introduction.....   | 132 |
| 8.9.2.2   | PolicyInfo information element .....                                      | 132 |
| 8.9.2.2.1 | Description .....   | 132 |
| 8.9.2.2.2 | Attributes .....  | 132 |
| 8.9.3     | PolicyChangeNotification.....   | 132 |
| 8.9.3.1   | Description .....   | 132 |
| 8.9.3.2   | Trigger Conditions .....  | 132 |
| 8.9.3.3   | Attributes.....   | 132 |
| 8.9.4     | PolicyConflictNotification.....   | 132 |
| 8.9.4.1   | Description .....   | 132 |
| 8.9.4.2   | Trigger Conditions .....  | 132 |
| 8.9.4.3   | Attributes.....   | 132 |

|                               |  |            |
|-------------------------------|--|------------|
| <b>Annex A (normative):</b>   | <b>NFVI operation and maintenance policies .....</b> | <b>133</b> |
| <b>Annex B (informative):</b> | <b>Bibliography .....</b>                            | <b>134</b> |
| <b>Annex C (informative):</b> | <b>Change history .....</b>                          | <b>135</b> |
| History .....                 |  | 137        |

---

## Intellectual Property Rights

### Essential patents

IPRs essential or potentially essential to normative deliverables may have been declared to ETSI. The declarations pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, are publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "*Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards*", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the [ETSI IPR online database](#).

Pursuant to the ETSI Directives including the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation regarding the essentiality of IPRs, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

### Trademarks

The present document may include trademarks and/or tradenames which are asserted and/or registered by their owners. ETSI claims no ownership of these except for any which are indicated as being the property of ETSI, and conveys no right to use or reproduce any trademark and/or tradename. Mention of those trademarks in the present document does not constitute an endorsement by ETSI of products, services or organizations associated with those trademarks.

**DECT™**, **PLUGTESTS™**, **UMTS™** and the ETSI logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members. **3GPP™**, **LTE™** and **5G™** logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners. **oneM2M™** logo is a trademark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the oneM2M Partners. **GSM®** and the GSM logo are trademarks registered and owned by the GSM Association.

---

## Foreword

This Group Specification (GS) has been produced by ETSI Industry Specification Group (ISG) Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV).

---

## Modal verbs terminology

In the present document "**shall**", "**shall not**", "**should**", "**should not**", "**may**", "**need not**", "**will**", "**will not**", "**can**" and "**cannot**" are to be interpreted as described in clause 3.2 of the [ETSI Drafting Rules](#) (Verbal forms for the expression of provisions).

"**must**" and "**must not**" are **NOT** allowed in ETSI deliverables except when used in direct citation.

---

# 1 Scope

The present document specifies the interfaces supported over the Vi-Vnfm reference point of the NFV-MANO architectural framework ETSI GS NFV 006 [i.2] as well as the information elements exchanged over those interfaces.

---

## 2 References

### 2.1 Normative references

References are either specific (identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number) or non-specific. For specific references, only the cited version applies. For non-specific references, the latest version of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

Referenced documents which are not found to be publicly available in the expected location might be found in the [ETSI docbox](#).

NOTE: While any hyperlinks included in this clause were valid at the time of publication, ETSI cannot guarantee their long-term validity.

The following referenced documents are necessary for the application of the present document.

- [1] [Recommendation ITU-T X.733](#): "Information technology - Open Systems Interconnection - Systems Management: Alarm reporting function".
- [2] [ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027](#): "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Performance Measurements Specification".
- [3] [ETSI GS NFV-IFA 048](#): "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Policy Information Model Specification".
- [4] [ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045](#): "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Faults and alarms modelling specification".
- [5] [ETSI GS NFV-IFA 010](#): "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Functional requirements specification".
- [6] [ETSI GS NFV-IFA 013](#): "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Os-Ma-nfvo reference point - Interface and Information Model Specification".

### 2.2 Informative references

References are either specific (identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number) or non-specific. For specific references, only the cited version applies. For non-specific references, the latest version of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

NOTE: While any hyperlinks included in this clause were valid at the time of publication, ETSI cannot guarantee their long-term validity.

The following referenced documents may be useful in implementing an ETSI deliverable or add to the reader's understanding, but are not required for conformance to the present document.

- [i.1] ETSI GR NFV 003: "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV); Terminology for Main Concepts in NFV".
- [i.2] ETSI GS NFV 006: "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 4; Management and Orchestration; Architectural Framework Specification".
- [i.3] ISO/IEC 9646-7: "Information technology — Open Systems Interconnection — Conformance testing methodology and framework — Part 7: Implementation Conformance Statements".

- [i.4] ETSI GS NFV-IFA 005: "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Or-Vi reference point - Interface and Information Model Specification".
- [i.5] ETSI GS NFV-IFA 007: "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Or-Vnfm reference point - Interface and Information Model Specification".
- [i.6] ETSI GS NFV-IFA 008: "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV) Release 5; Management and Orchestration; Ve-Vnfm reference point - Interface and Information Model Specification".
- [i.7] Recommendation ITU-T Y.3500: "Information technology - Cloud computing - Overview and vocabulary".

---

## 3 Definition of terms, symbols and abbreviations

### 3.1 Terms

For the purposes of the present document, the terms given in ETSI GR NFV 003 [i.1] and the following apply:

**NOTE:** A term defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same term, if any, in ETSI GR NFV 003 [i.1].

**infrastructure resource group:** logical resource collection grouping virtual resource instances assigned to a tenant along with Software Images

**resource reservation identifier:** identifier that establishes the identity of an arrangement to secure usage of resources by a consumer

**NOTE:** The identifier does not identify the resources that have been reserved.

**tenant:** one or more NFV MANO service users sharing access to a set of physical, virtual or service resources

**NOTE 1:** This definition has been specialized from the term "tenant" as defined in Recommendation ITU-T Y.3500 [i.7].

**NOTE 2:** The "tenant" concept in NFV should not be confused with the "tenant" (a.k.a. "project") concept in OpenStack®. The OpenStack® implementation covers a subset of the overall functionalities required by multi-tenancy in NFV.

**NOTE 3:** The OpenStack® Word Mark and OpenStack Logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. ETSI is not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

**virtualised resource descriptor:** template declaring parameters, requirements, lifecycle and composition of a set of virtualised resources

**NOTE:** The virtualised resource descriptor is used by the VIM to perform orchestration and lifecycle management of virtualised resources.

**EXAMPLE:** In the OpenStack® case, this is a Heat Orchestration Template (HOT).

### 3.2 Symbols

Void.

## 3.3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the abbreviations given in ETSI GR NFV 003 [i.1] and the following apply:

NOTE: An abbreviation defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same abbreviation, if any, in ETSI GR NFV 003 [i.1].

CMF                      Certificate Management Function

---

# 4 Overview of interfaces and information models associated to the Vi-Vnfm reference point

## 4.1 Introduction

This clause provides an overview of the interfaces and information element associated with the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

The Vi-Vnfm reference point is used for exchange of information elements between the Virtualised Infrastructure Manager (VIM) and VNF Manager (VNFM), and the following are the interfaces supported by this reference point:

- Software Image Management.
- Virtualised Resources Information Management, composed of:
  - Virtualised Compute Resources Information Management.
  - Virtualised Network Resources Information Management.
  - Virtualised Storage Resources Information Management.
- Virtualised Resources Management, composed of:
  - Virtualised Compute Resources Management.
  - Virtualised Network Resources Management.
  - Virtualised Storage Resources Management.
- Virtualised Resources Change Notification, composed of:
  - Virtualised Compute Resources Change Notification.
  - Virtualised Network Resources Change Notification.
  - Virtualised Storage Resources Change Notification.
- Virtualised Resources Reservation Management, composed of:
  - Virtualised Compute Resources Reservation Management.
  - Virtualised Network Resources Reservation Management.
  - Virtualised Storage Resources Reservation Management.
  - Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification.
- Virtualised Resources Quota Management, composed of:
  - Virtualised Compute Resources Quota Management.
  - Virtualised Network Resources Quota Management.
  - Virtualised Storage Resources Quota Management.

- Virtualised Resources Quota Change Notification.
- Virtualised Resources Performance Management.
- Virtualised Resources Fault Management.
- Policy Management.

All of the above interfaces are produced by the VIM and consumed by the VNFM. At present no interfaces are produced by the VNFM.

The information elements exchanged by the above interfaces are also part of the present document.

## 4.2 Relation to other NFV group specifications

The present document is referencing information from the following NFV Group Specifications:

- Or-Vi Reference Point - Interface and Information Model Specification [i.4]:
  - ETSI GS NFV-IFA 005 [i.4] implements the software image management interface and the interfaces for the management of virtualised resources, their information, performance and failure on the Or-Vi reference point.
- Or-Vnfm Reference Point - Interface and Information Model Specification [i.5]:
  - ETSI GS NFV-IFA 007 [i.5] implements the virtualised resource management interface on the Or-Vnfm reference point.
- Ve-Vnfm Reference Point - Interface and Information Model Specification [i.6]:
  - ETSI GS NFV-IFA 008 [i.6] implements the virtualised resource performance/fault management on the Ve-Vnfm reference point.
- Management and Orchestration; Functional Requirements Specification [5]:
  - Interfaces associated with the Vi-Vnfm reference point are based on the functional requirements specified in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 010 [5] for the VIM and VNFM functional blocks.

## 4.3 Conventions

The following notations, defined in ISO/IEC 9646-7 [i.3], are used for the qualifier column of interface information elements:

- M mandatory - the capability is required to be supported.
- O optional - the capability may be supported or not.
- N/A not applicable - in the given context, it is impossible to use the capability.
- CM conditional mandatory - the capability is required to be supported and is conditional on the support of some condition. This condition shall be specified in the Description column.
- CO conditional optional - the capability may be supported or not and is conditional on the support of some condition. This condition shall be specified in the Description column.

If the type of a parameter or attribute has been marked as "Not specified" in the "Content" column, this means that its specification is left for part of the protocol design/data model design stage.

## 5 Reference point and interface requirements

### 5.1 Introduction

This clause defines or references requirements applicable to interfaces in the specific context of the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

### 5.2 Vi-Vnfm Reference Point Requirements

Table 5.2-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.2-1: Vi-Vnfm reference point requirements**

| Number      | Functional requirement description   |
|-------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.001 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Software Image Management interface provided by the VIM.                             |
| Vi-Vnfm.002 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Compute Resources Information Management interface provided by the VIM.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.003 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Network Resources Information Management interface provided by the VIM.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.004 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Storage Resources Information Management interface provided by the VIM.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.005 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Compute Resources Management interface provided by the VIM.              |
| Vi-Vnfm.006 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Network Resources Management Interface provided by the VIM.              |
| Vi-Vnfm.007 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Storage Resources Management Interface provided by the VIM.              |
| Vi-Vnfm.008 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface provided by the VIM.                |
| Vi-Vnfm.009 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface provided by the VIM.          |
| Vi-Vnfm.010 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Compute Resources Change Notification interface provided by the VIM.     |
| Vi-Vnfm.011 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Network Resources Change Notification interface provided by the VIM.     |
| Vi-Vnfm.012 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Storage Resources Change Notification interface provided by the VIM.     |
| Vi-Vnfm.013 | All operations on interfaces supported by the Vi-Vnfm reference point require authentication and authorization of the consumer.    |
| Vi-Vnfm.014 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Compute Resources Reservation Management interface provided by the VIM.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.015 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Network Resources Reservation Management Interface provided by the VIM.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.016 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Storage Resources Reservation Management Interface provided by the VIM.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.017 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification Interface provided by the VIM. |
| Vi-Vnfm.018 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Compute Resources Quota Management interface provided by the VIM.        |
| Vi-Vnfm.019 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Network Resources Quota Management interface provided by the VIM.        |
| Vi-Vnfm.020 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Storage Resources Quota Management interface provided by the VIM.        |
| Vi-Vnfm.021 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Virtualised Resources Quota Change Notification interface provided by the VIM.       |
| Vi-Vnfm.022 | The Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the Policy Management interface provided by the VIM.                                     |

## 5.3 Interface Requirements

### 5.3.1 Software Image Management interface requirements

Table 5.3.1-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Software Image Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.1-1: Software Image Management interface requirements**

| Numbering       | Functional requirements description  |
|-----------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Sim.001 | The Software Image Management interface produced by the VIM on the reference point Vi-Vnfm shall support querying information of software image(s) from the VIM. |
| NOTE:           | The Software Image Management Interface addresses software images at virtualisation container level, e.g. VM images.   |

### 5.3.2 Virtualised Resources Information Management interface requirements

Unless differently specified, the requirements in this clause are applicable to Virtualised Compute, Network and Storage Resources Information Management interfaces and apply respectively to consumable virtualised compute, network and storage resources.

Table 5.3.2-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Information Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.2-1: Virtualised Resources Information Management interface requirements**

| Numbering        | Functional requirements description   |
|------------------|---|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrim.001 | The Virtualised Resources Information Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support querying information regarding consumable virtualised resources that can be provided by the VIM.                                    |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrim.002 | The Virtualised Resources Information Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support notifications to the consumer of changes to information regarding consumable virtualised resources that can be provided by the VIM. |

### 5.3.3 Virtualised Resources Management interface requirements

Unless differently specified, the requirements in this clause are applicable to Virtualised Compute, Network and Storage Resources Management interfaces and apply respectively to virtualised compute, network and storage resources.

Table 5.3.3-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

It shall be possible to use virtualised resource descriptors to convey the exchange of information associated to interface operations fulfilled by the requirements in table 5.3.3-1.

**Table 5.3.3-1: Virtualised Resources Management interface requirements**

| Numbering      | Functional requirement description   |
|----------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.01 | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support requesting the allocation of virtualised resources.            |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.02 | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support querying information about instantiated virtualised resources. |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.03 | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support updating instantiated virtualised resources (see example).     |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.04 | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support terminating instantiated virtualised resources.                |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.05 | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support operating instantiated virtualised resources (see note 1).     |

| Numbering  | Functional requirement description  |
|--|---|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.06   | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support scaling instantiated virtualised resources (see note 1).  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.07   | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support migrating instantiated virtualised resources (see note 1).  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.08   | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support attaching instantiated virtualised storage resources to instantiated virtualised compute resources.   |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.09   | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support detaching instantiated virtualised storage resources from instantiated virtualised compute resources. |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrm.10   | The Virtualised Resources Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support managing the power state of managed virtualised resources (see note 2).                               |
| EXAMPLE: Updating the configuration and/or parameterization of an instantiated virtualised resource, changing the power state of an instantiated virtualised resource.                                     |   |
| NOTE 1: This requirement does not apply to the Virtualised Network Resources Management interface.   |   |
| NOTE 2: The present document version supports only managing the power state of virtualised compute resources, hence the requirement only applies to the Virtualised Compute Resource Management interface. |   |

### 5.3.4 Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface requirements

Unless differently specified, the requirements in this clause are applicable to Virtualised Compute, Network and Storage Resources Reservation Management interfaces and apply respectively to virtualised compute, network and storage resource reservations.

Table 5.3.4-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.4-1: Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface requirements**

| Numbering   | Functional requirement description  |
|---|---|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrrm.001  | The Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support querying information about resource reservations that the VNFM has access to. |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrrm.002  | The Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the explicit identification of a reservation.                                 |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrrm.003  | The Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the implicit identification of a reservation.                                 |
| NOTE: An implicit identification identifies a reservation, for example, by using an associated identifier of the consumer or tenant that uses such reservation. |   |

### 5.3.5 Virtualised Resources Change Notification interface requirements

Unless differently specified, the requirements in this clause are applicable to Virtualised Compute, Network and Storage Resources Change Notification interfaces and apply respectively to virtualised compute, network and storage resources.

Table 5.3.5-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Change Notification interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.5-1: Virtualised Resources Change Notification interface requirements**

| Numbering       | Functional requirement   |
|-----------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrcn.01 | The Virtualised Resources Change Notification interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support providing state change notifications about virtualised resources, e.g. that will be impacted due to maintenance of NFVI components, evacuation of physical hosts, addition and termination of resources, or migration to support energy efficiency. |

### 5.3.6 Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification interface requirements

Table 5.3.6-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.6-1: Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification interface requirements**

| Numbering         | Functional requirement description   |
|-------------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrrcn.001 | The Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support notification of changes related to virtualised resource reservations. |

### 5.3.7 Virtualised Resources Quota Management interface requirements

Unless differently specified, the requirements in this clause are applicable to Virtualised Compute, Network and Storage Resources Quota Management interfaces and apply respectively to virtualised compute, network and storage resource quotas.

Table 5.3.7-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Quota Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.7-1: Virtualised Resources Quota Management interface requirements**

| Numbering        | Functional requirements description  |
|------------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrqm.001 | The Virtualised Resources Quota Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support querying information about resource quotas.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrqm.002 | The Virtualised Resources Quota Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support identifying the consumer (e.g. tenant) of the virtualised resources which the quota is applied to. |

### 5.3.8 Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface requirements

Table 5.3.8-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.8-1: Virtualised Resources Reservation Performance Management interface requirements**

| Numbering        | Functional requirements description  |
|------------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.001 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFM to control the collection and reporting of performance information for virtualised resources.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.002 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the capability to notify about the availability of performance information.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.003 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall expose the type of virtualised resource (e.g. compute, storage, network), for which the VIM collects the performance information in the NFVI domain.           |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.004 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall expose the type of performance information that the VIM can collect for the monitored virtualised resource(s).   |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.005 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFMs to create a PM job specifying the type of resource(s) and performance information that the VNFMs requires.                                    |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.006 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFMs to create a PM job specifying the granularity for collection and reporting of performance information from specified virtualised resource(s). |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.007 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFMs to delete a PM job.   |

| Numbering        | Functional requirements description   |
|------------------|---|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.008 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFMs to receive notifications of data availability for a PM job.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.009 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM shall support PM jobs for periodic collection of performance information (bounded or unbounded).   |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.010 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the grouping of measurements (see note).  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.011 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support setting threshold conditions on the performance information collected by the VIM for specified virtualised resource(s).         |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.012 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the deletion of threshold conditions on the performance information collected by the VIM for specified virtualised resource(s). |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.013 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the capability to notify about a threshold defined for a specified metric for a virtualised resource being crossed.             |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.014 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFMs to receive notifications related to threshold crossing.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrpm.015 | The Virtualised Resources Performance Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support querying the active PM jobs and defined threshold conditions by the consumer entity that created them.                          |
| NOTE:            | The group does not imply any modification/aggregation of performance measurements data and may be viewed as an alias for a pre-defined list of measurements. The group can be created e.g. by device type, by port type, by virtual machine, etc.           |

### 5.3.9 Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface requirements

Table 5.3.9-1 specifies requirements applicable to the Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.9-1: Virtualised Resources Reservation Fault Management interface requirements**

| Numbering        | Functional requirements description  |
|------------------|--|
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.001 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall enable the VNFM to collect virtualised resource fault information.                                   |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.002 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support providing alarm notifications related to faults on virtualised resources to the VNFM.        |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.003 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support providing notification when there is a change in alarm information on virtualised resources. |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.004 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the sending of notification to the VNFM when an alarm has been created.                      |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.005 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support the sending of notification to the VNFM when an alarm has been cleared.                      |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.006 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall allow unambiguous identification of the alarm sent to the VNFM.                                      |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.007 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall allow unambiguous identification of the virtualised resources causing the alarm.                     |
| Vi-Vnfm.Vrfm.008 | The Virtualised Resources Fault Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall allow unambiguous identification of the alarm cause.   |

### 5.3.10 Policy Management interface requirements

Table 5.3.10-1 specifies requirements applicable to the policy management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

**Table 5.3.10-1: Policy management interface requirements**

| Numbering   | Requirements description  |
|---|---|
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.001  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support transferring NFV-MANO policies. See notes 1 and 2.   |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.002  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support deleting NFV-MANO policies. See note 1.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.003  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support querying NFV-MANO policies. See note 1.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.004  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support activating NFV-MANO policies. See note 1.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.005  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support deactivating NFV-MANO policies. See note 1.  |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.006  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support providing to the VNFM notifications about changes of a policy that are related to operations of transferring policy, deleting policy, activating policy and deactivating policy. |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.007  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support providing to the VNFM notifications about any detected policy conflicts.   |
| Vi-Vnfm.Plcm.008  | The Policy Management interface produced by the VIM on the Vi-Vnfm reference point shall support subscribing to policy management related notifications.  |
| NOTE 1: For this reference point, NFV-MANO policies include policies applied in virtualised resource management (resource allocation). The virtualised resource is used by the VNF(s) which the VNFM manages.   |   |
| NOTE 2: The case of transferring NFV-MANO policy applies when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- a new policy is imported from the VNFM, which results in the creation of a new policy locally, or</li> <li>- the changes for an existing policy are imported from the VNFM, which results in the update of a policy locally.</li> </ul> |   |

## 6 VNFM exposed interfaces

There are no interfaces exposed by the VNFM associated to the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

## 7 VIM exposed interfaces

### 7.1 Introduction

This clause defines the interfaces exposed by the VIM towards the VNFM over the Vi-Vnfm reference point.

NOTE 1: The fact that operation parameters and information element attributes are presented in tabular form does not preclude stage 3 designs in which these operation parameters and information element attributes are encoded in different parts of request and response messages. For example, in a RESTful interface, parts of them may be encoded in the URL, in the message header, in the message body or any combination thereof.

NOTE 2: The present document version does not specify the required operations for the management of resource groups for infrastructure tenants (e.g. creation of a resource group, etc.). The management of resource groups is necessary to support operations where a "resourceGroupId" is carried in input and/or output parameter of the operations. Refer to interface operations:

- Allocate virtualised compute, network and storage resource operations (clauses 7.3.1.2, 7.4.1.2 and 7.5.1.2).
- Virtualised Resource Quota related information elements (clauses 8.8.2.2, 8.8.3.2 and 8.8.4.2).

## 7.2 Software Image Management Interface

### 7.2.1 Description

This interface allows the VNFM to query the VIM for software images.

NOTE 1: This interface addresses software images at virtualisation container level, e.g. VM images.

NOTE 2: The interface exposure assumes (but does not mandate that) software images are stored in repositories managed by the VIM(s) in order to minimize delays incurred on transferring such software images after initiation of VNF lifecycle.

NOTE 3: The Query Images operation applicable on multiple images is assumed to be best effort.

### 7.2.2 Query Images operation

#### 7.2.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying the information of software images in the image repository managed by the VIM.

For example, this would allow retrieving information of a selection of images previously provisioned, based on filtering criteria using the image metadata, or to obtain URIs of images based on metadata criteria in order to be able to choose the appropriate kind and version of image for creating new Virtualisation Container instances.

Table 7.2.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.2.2.1-1: Query Images operation**

| Message             | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryImagesRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryImagesResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.2.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.2.2.2-1.

**Table 7.2.2.2-1: Query Images operation input parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| imageQueryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter used to select the software image instances on which this operation is to act. |

#### 7.2.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.2.2.3-1.

**Table 7.2.2.3-1: Query Images operation output parameters**

| Information element      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                  | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------------|--|
| softwareImageInformation | M         | 0..N        | SoftwareImageInformation | Information of all software images matching the query. See clause 8.2. |

#### 7.2.2.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) whether or not it was possible to process the query.

## 7.2.3 Query Image operation

### 7.2.3.1 Description

This operation allows querying the information about a specific software image in the image repository managed by the VIM.

Table 7.2.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.2.3.1-1: Query Image operation**

| Message            | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryImageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryImageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.2.3.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.2.3.2-1.

**Table 7.2.3.2-1: Query Image operation input parameters**

| Parameter       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                                     |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| softwareImageId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the software image to be queried. |

### 7.2.3.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.2.3.3-1.

**Table 7.2.3.3-1: Query Image operation output parameters**

| Parameter                | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                  | Description  |
|--------------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------------|--|
| softwareImageInformation | M         | 0..1        | SoftwareImageInformation | Information of the software image matching the query.<br>See clause 8.2. |

### 7.2.3.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) whether or not it was possible to process the query.

## 7.3 Virtualised Compute Interfaces

### 7.3.1 Virtualised Compute Resources Management Interface

#### 7.3.1.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised compute resources available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes operations for allocating, querying, updating and terminating virtualised compute resources as well as operations for scaling, migrating and operating the administrative status of a virtualised compute resource.

## 7.3.1.2 Allocate Virtualised Compute Resource operation

### 7.3.1.2.1 Description

This operation allows requesting the allocation of virtualised compute resources as indicated by the consumer functional block.

Table 7.3.1.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.2.1-1: Allocate Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------------|-------------|------------|
| AllocateComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| AllocateComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.2.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.2.2-1: Allocate Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter                         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|--|
| computeName                       | M         | 0..1        | String                           | Name provided by the consumer for the virtualised compute resource to be allocated. It can be used for identifying resources from consumer side.   |
| reservationId                     | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                       | Identifier of the resource reservation applicable to this virtualised resource management operation.   |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityConstraints | M         | 0..N        | AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint | List of elements with affinity or anti affinity (see clause 8.4.8.2) information of the virtualised compute resource to be allocated.<br>All the listed constraints shall be fulfilled for a successful operation.   |
| computeFlavourId                  | M         | 1           | Identifier                       | Identifier of the Compute Flavour, that is providing information about the particular memory, CPU and disk resources for virtualised compute resource to be allocated. The Compute Flavour is created with Create Compute Flavour operation (clause 7.3.4.2). For the content of Compute Flavour see clause 8.4.2.2. |
| vclmageld                         | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                       | Identifier of the virtualisation container software image (e.g. a virtual machine image). Cardinality can be 0 if an "empty" virtualisation container is allocated.  |
| interfaceData                     | M         | 0..N        | VirtualInterfaceData             | Data of network interfaces which are specific to a Virtual Compute Resource instance. See clause 8.4.3.7.  |
| metaData                          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                     | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.  |
| resourceGroupId                   | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                       | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain. Cardinality can be 0 if the consumer credentials are implicitly associated to a specific resource group.   |

| Parameter  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|--|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| locationConstraints  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | If present, it defines location constraints for the resource(s) is (are) requested to be allocated, e.g. in what particular resource zone. |
| userData   | M         | 0..1        | UserData      | Contains user data to customize the virtualised compute resource at boot-time. See note.   |
| NOTE: The user data may consist of static data obtained from an attribute in the VNFD, data provided by the NFVO or the EM to the VNFM in the operation that triggers the invocation of the Allocate Virtualised Compute Resource operation, e.g. the Instantiate VNF operation, and/or one or multiple certificate data obtained from CMF when delegation-mode is used. The user data is transparent to the VIM. It is passed to the allocated virtualised compute resource where it is up to the guest software to avail of it in order to e.g. configure credentials, address information, install certificates, etc. |           |             |               |  |

### 7.3.1.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.2.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.2.3-1: Allocate Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| computeData | M         | 1           | VirtualCompute | Contains information of the newly instantiated virtualised compute resource.<br>See clause 8.4.3.2. |

### 7.3.1.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has created the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resource and allocated this resource according to the input requirements and constraints. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the newly instantiated virtualised compute resource plus any additional information about the allocate request operation. The VIM may also return intermediate status reports during the allocation process.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.1.3 Query Virtualised Compute Resource operation

### 7.3.1.3.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about instantiated virtualised compute resources.

Table 7.3.1.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.3.1-1: Query Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.3.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.3.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.3.2-1: Query Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter          | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| queryComputeFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information, expressing the type of information to be retrieved.<br>It can also be used to specify one or more resources to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.3.1.3.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.3.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.3.3-1: Query Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | VirtualCompute | Contains information about the virtual compute resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching compute resources exist.<br>See clause 8.4.3.2. |

### 7.3.1.3.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resources. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the compute resources that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.3.1.4 Update Virtualised Compute Resource operation

### 7.3.1.4.1 Description

This operation allows updating the configuration and/or parameters of an instantiated virtualised compute resource. This can include, for instance, updating metadata, adding extra virtual network interfaces to a compute resource, attaching a virtual network interface to a specific network port, or changing the power state of the virtualised compute resource.

Table 7.3.1.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.4.1-1: Update Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message               | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------|
| UpdateComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| UpdateComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.4.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.4.2-1: Update Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter           | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                     | Description   |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------------|---|
| computeId           | M         | 1           | Identifier                  | Identifier of the virtualised compute resource to update.   |
| networkInterfaceNew | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkInterfaceData | New virtual network interface(s) to be added to the compute resource.<br>See note 1.<br>See clause 8.4.2.6. |

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                 | Description   |
|---|-----------|-------------|-------------------------|---|
| networkInterfaceUpdate  | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkInterface | Virtual network interface(s) to be updated on the compute resource. This can include, for instance, attaching/detaching a virtual network interface to/from its port, or re-attaching to another network port. See note 1.<br>See clause 8.4.3.6. |
| powerStateUpdate  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified           | Target power state of the virtualised compute resource. This can include changing the power state of virtual CPUs of the compute resource. See notes 1 and 2.   |
| metaData  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair            | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.   |
| <p>NOTE 1: Cardinality can be "0", as it is recommended that only one type of update is handled per operation request, either adding new virtual network interfaces (see "networkInterfaceNew" input), updating existing ones (see "networkInterfaceUpdate" input), or changing the power state of the virtualised compute resource is made in a single operation request.</p> <p>NOTE 2: The operation "Operate Virtualised Compute Resource" (see clause 7.3.1.6) enables operating the virtualised compute resource in terms of starting, stopping and suspending, which are also related to power state management.</p> |           |             |                         |   |

#### 7.3.1.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.4.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.4.3-1: Update Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| computeId   | M         | 1           | Identifier     | Identifier of the virtualised compute resource that has been updated. This parameter has the same value as the input parameter. |
| computeData | M         | 1           | VirtualCompute | Contains information of the updated attributes of the instantiated virtualised compute resource.<br>See clause 8.4.3.2.         |

#### 7.3.1.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the updated virtualised compute resource plus any additional information about the update request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

### 7.3.1.5 Terminate Virtualised Compute Resource operation

#### 7.3.1.5.1 Description

This operation allows de-allocating and terminating one or more instantiated virtualised compute resource(s).

When the operation is done on multiple resources, it is assumed to be best-effort, i.e. it can succeed for a subset of the resources, and fail for the remaining ones.

Table 7.3.1.5.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.5.1-1: Terminate Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------|
| TerminateComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| TerminateComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.5.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.5.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.5.2-1: Terminate Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| computeld | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifier(s) of the virtualised compute resource(s) to be terminated. |

### 7.3.1.5.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.5.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.5.3-1: Terminate Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| computeld | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifier(s) of the virtualised compute resource(s) successfully terminated. |

### 7.3.1.5.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has terminated the virtualised compute resources and removed the internal management objects for those resources. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the terminated virtualised compute resource plus any additional information about the terminate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.1.6 Operate Virtualised Compute Resource operation

### 7.3.1.6.1 Description

This operation allows executing specific operation command on instantiated virtualised compute resources.

Table 7.3.1.6.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.6.1-1: Operate Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| OperateComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| OperateComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.6.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.6.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.6.2-1: Operate Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter                 | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content      | Description   |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|---|
| computeId                 | M         | 1           | Identifier   | Identifier of the virtualised compute resource to operate.  |
| computeOperation          | M         | 1           | String       | Type of operation to be performed on the virtualised compute resource. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "start"</li> <li>• "stop"</li> <li>• "pause"</li> <li>• "suspend"</li> <li>• "reboot"</li> <li>• "quiesce"</li> <li>• "unquiesce"</li> <li>• "create snapshot"</li> <li>• "revert to snapshot"</li> <li>• "delete snapshot"</li> </ul> |
| computeOperationInputData | M         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair | Additional parameters associated to the operation to be performed. For example, if the operation is "delete snapshot", information identifying the snapshot to be deleted is provided.  |

### 7.3.1.6.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.6.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.6.3-1: Operate Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter                  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|----------------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| computeData                | M         | 1           | VirtualCompute | Contains information on the new status of the operated virtualised compute resource. See clause 8.4.3.2.  |
| computeOperationOutputData | M         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair   | Set of output values depending on the type of operation. For instance, when a snapshot operation is requested, this field provides information about the identifier of the snapshot and its location. |

### 7.3.1.6.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has executed the requested operation command on the virtualised compute resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the new status of the operated virtualised compute resources, operation specific data plus any additional information about the operate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.1.7 Scale Virtualised Compute Resource operation

### 7.3.1.7.1 Description

This operation allows scaling a virtualised compute resource by adding or removing capacity in terms of virtual CPUs and virtual memory.

Table 7.3.1.7.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.7.1-1: Scale Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| ScaleComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| ScaleComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.7.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.7.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.7.2-1: Scale Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| computeId        | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised compute resource to be scaled.   |
| computeFlavourId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the Compute Flavour that is providing information about the particular memory, CPU and disk resources for virtualised compute resource to be allocated. The Compute Flavour should be created with Create Compute Flavour operation (clause 7.3.4.2). For the content of Compute Flavour see clause 8.4.2.2. |

### 7.3.1.7.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.7.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.7.3-1: Scale Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|--|
| computeData | M         | 1           | VirtualCompute | Contains information of the scaled virtualised compute resource. See clause 8.4.3.2. |

### 7.3.1.7.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resource and has scaled this resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the scaled virtualised compute resource plus any additional information about the scale request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.1.8 Migrate Virtualised Compute Resource operation

### 7.3.1.8.1 Description

This operation allows moving a virtualised compute resource between locations. For instance, the operation performs the migration of a computing resource from one physical machine (host) to another physical machine.

Table 7.3.1.8.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.8.1-1: Migrate Virtualised Compute Resource operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| MigrateComputeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| MigrateComputeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.8.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.8.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.8.2-1: Migrate Virtualised Compute Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter                         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|--|
| computeId                         | M         | 1           | Identifier                       | Identifier of the virtualised compute resource to be migrated.   |
| migrationConstraint               | M         | 0..1        | Not specified                    | When present, the migration constraint parameter gives indications on where to migrate the resource, e.g. to a specific resource zone.   |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityConstraints | CM        | 0..N        | AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint | List of elements with affinity or anti affinity (see clause 8.4.8.2) information of the virtualised compute resource to be migrated.<br>All the listed constraints shall be fulfilled for a successful operation.<br>This information is only necessary if the VIM needs to maintain affinity during the migration operation based on a list of resources. |
| migrationType                     | M         | 1           | Enum                             | Defines the type of migration.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LIVE_MIGRATION</li> <li>OFFLINE_MIGRATION</li> </ul>  |

### 7.3.1.8.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.8.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.8.3-1: Migrate Virtualised Compute Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| computeData | M         | 1           | VirtualCompute | Contains information of the new host of the migrated virtualised compute resource.<br>See clause 8.4.3.2. |

### 7.3.1.8.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resource and has migrated this resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the migrated virtualised compute resource plus any additional information about the migrate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.1.9 Create Virtualised Compute Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation

### 7.3.1.9.1 Description

This operation allows an authorized consumer functional block to request the creation of a resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group. An anti-affinity group contains resources that are not placed in proximity, e.g. that do not share the same physical NFVI node. An affinity group contains resources that are placed in proximity, e.g. that do share the same physical NFVI node.

This operation shall be supported by the VIM. It shall be supported by the VNFM, if the VNFM supports named resource groups for affinity/anti-affinity (see clause 8.4.8.1).

Table 7.3.1.9.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.9.1-1: Create Virtualised Compute Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation**

| Message   | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| CreateComputeResourceAffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraintsGroupRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| CreateComputeResourceAffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraintsGroupResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.9.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.9.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.9.2-1: Create Virtualised Compute Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| groupName | M         | 1           | String  | Name of the group, given by the consumer.   |
| type      | M         | 1           | Enum    | Indicates whether this is an affinity or anti-affinity group.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AFFINITY</li> <li>ANTI_AFFINITY</li> </ul>     |
| scope     | M         | 0..1        | Enum    | Qualifies the scope of the constraint.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVI_NODE</li> <li>etc.</li> </ul> Defaults to "NFVI_NODE" if absent. |

### 7.3.1.9.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.9.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.9.3-1: Create Virtualised Compute Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description             |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------------------|
| groupId   | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the group |

### 7.3.1.9.4 Operation results

On success, the requested resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group has been created. On failure, appropriate error information is returned.

## 7.3.1.10 Attach Virtualised Storage Resource operation

### 7.3.1.10.1 Description

This operation allows attaching a virtualised storage resource (e.g. volume) to a compute resource.

Table 7.3.1.10.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.10.1-1: Attach Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message                                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--|-------------|------------|
| AttachVirtualisedStorageResourceRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| AttachVirtualisedStorageResourceResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.1.10.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.10.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.10.2-1: Attach Virtualised Storage Resource input parameters**

| Parameter  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| computeId  | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the instantiated virtualised compute resource.   |
| storageId  | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the instantiated virtualised storage resource to be attached.                              |
| mountpoint | M         | 0..1        | String     | If present, it defines where the virtualised storage resource is to be attached to the compute resource. |

### 7.3.1.10.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.10.3-1.

**Table 7.3.1.10.3-1: Attach Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| computeData | M         | 1           | VirtualCompute | Contains information of the virtualised storage resource attached to the compute resource.<br>See clause 8.4.3.2. |

### 7.3.1.10.4 Operation results

In case of success, the virtualised storage resource is attached to the compute resource. In case of failure, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

### 7.3.1.11 Detach Virtualised Storage Resource operation

#### 7.3.1.11.1 Description

This operation allows detaching a virtualised storage resource (e.g. volume) from a compute resource.

Table 7.3.1.11.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.1.11.1-1: Detach Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message                                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--|-------------|------------|
| DetachVirtualisedStorageResourceRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| DetachVirtualisedStorageResourceResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.3.1.11.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.1.11.2-1.

**Table 7.3.1.11.2-1: Detach Virtualised Storage Resource input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| computeId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the instantiated virtualised compute resource.                |
| storageId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the instantiated virtualised storage resource to be detached. |

### 7.3.1.11.3 Output parameters

No output parameter.

### 7.3.1.11.4 Operation results

In case of success, the virtualised storage resource is detached from the compute resource. In case of failure, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.2 Virtualised Compute Resources Change Notification Interface

### 7.3.2.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request subscription to virtualised compute resources change notifications and to provide such notification to the subscribed consumer. As such, it provides the notification part of the Virtualised Compute Resource Management interface.

### 7.3.2.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.3.2.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to subscribe with a filter for the notifications related to virtualised compute resource changes sent by the VIM. Specification of filtering mechanism is part of the protocol design.

Table 7.3.2.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.2.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.3.2.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.2.2.2-1.

**Table 7.3.2.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| inputFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting the virtualised resource(s) or virtual resource group(s) and the related change notifications to subscribe to. This filter can contain information about specific types of changes to subscribe to or attributes of the resource. |

#### 7.3.2.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.2.2.3-1.

**Table 7.3.2.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

#### 7.3.2.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to compute resource changes on virtualised compute resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

#### 7.3.2.3 Notify operation

##### 7.3.2.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.3.2.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.2.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification is sent by this operation:

- VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification. See clause 8.4.9.

### 7.3.3 Virtualised Compute Resources Information Management Interface

#### 7.3.3.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request operations related to the information about consumable virtualised compute resources. The consumable virtualised compute resources include (not limited to) virtualised compute (virtualised CPU, virtualised memory), virtualised storage, virtualised NIC, etc. which are managed by a VIM.

The parameters related to consumable virtualised compute resources describe the types and characteristics of the virtualised resources that a consumer functional block can request for allocation as part of the Virtualised Compute Resource Management interface.

The following operations are defined for this interface:

- 1) Subscribe resources information changes operation.
- 2) Notify resources information changes operation.
- 3) Query resources information operation.

#### 7.3.3.2 Subscribe operation

##### 7.3.3.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFMs to subscribe for the notifications related to information changes about consumable virtualised compute resources. This also enables the VNFM to specify the scope of the subscription in terms of the specific virtual compute resources to be reported by the VIM using a filter as the input.

Table 7.3.3.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.3.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.3.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.3.2.2-1.

**Table 7.3.3.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting notifications. The filter can be on resource, type of notification or attribute of the notification. |

### 7.3.3.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.3.2.3-1.

**Table 7.3.3.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

### 7.3.3.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to information changes about consumable virtualised compute resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

## 7.3.3.3 Notify operation

### 7.3.3.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.3.3.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.3.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification can be notified/sent by this operation:

- InformationChangeNotification. See clause 8.3.2.

## 7.3.3.4 Query Virtualised Compute Resource Information operation

### 7.3.3.4.1 Description

This operation supports retrieval of information for the various types of virtualised compute resources managed by the VIM.

Table 7.3.3.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.3.3.4.1-1: Query Virtualised Compute Resource Information operation**

| Message                                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| QueryVirtualComputeResourceInfoRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryVirtualComputeResourceInfoResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.3.3.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.3.4.2-1.

**Table 7.3.3.4.2-1: Query Virtualised Compute Resource Information operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| informationQueryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter defining the information of consumable virtualised resources on which the query applies. |

#### 7.3.3.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.3.4.3-1.

**Table 7.3.3.4.3-1: Query Virtualised Compute Resource Information operation output parameters**

| Parameter                      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                           | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| virtualisedResourceInformation | M         | 0..N        | VirtualComputeResourceInformation | Virtualised compute resource information in the VIM that satisfies the query condition. See clause 8.3.3.2. |

#### 7.3.3.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has run the query for the various types of virtualised compute resources. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about for the various types of virtualised compute resources that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.3.4 Virtualised Compute Flavour Management Interface

### 7.3.4.1 Introduction

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request operations related to flavours. The interface includes operations for allocating, querying, updating and terminating flavours.

### 7.3.4.2 Create Compute Flavour operation

#### 7.3.4.2.1 Description

This operation allows requesting the creation of a flavour as indicated by the consumer functional block.

Table 7.3.4.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.3.4.2.1-1: Create Compute Flavour operation**

| Message                      | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| CreateComputeFlavourRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| CreateComputeFlavourResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.4.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.4.2.2-1.

**Table 7.3.4.2.2-1: Create Compute Flavour operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content               | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|--|
| flavour   | M         | 1           | VirtualComputeFlavour | Provides information about the particular memory, CPU and disk resources for virtualised compute resource to be allocated. See clause 8.4.2.2. |

### 7.3.4.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.4.2.3-1.

**Table 7.3.4.2.3-1: Create Compute Flavour operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                                |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| flavourId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the created Compute Flavour. |

### 7.3.4.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has created the Compute Flavour. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the newly created Compute Flavour.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.3.4.3 Query Compute Flavour operation

### 7.3.4.3.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about created Compute Flavours.

Table 7.3.4.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.3.4.3.1-1: Query Compute Flavour operation**

| Message                     | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryComputeFlavourRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryComputeFlavourResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.4.3.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.4.3.2-1.

**Table 7.3.4.3.2-1: Query Compute Flavour operation input parameters**

| Parameter                 | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| queryComputeFlavourFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information, expressing the type of information to be retrieved. It can also be used to specify one or more Compute Flavours to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.3.4.3.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.4.3.3-1.

**Table 7.3.4.3.3-1: Query Compute Flavour operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content               | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|--|
| flavours  | M         | 0..N        | VirtualComputeFlavour | List of Compute Flavours matching the query. For the definition of Compute Flavour see clause 8.4.2.2. |

### 7.3.4.3.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the Compute Flavours. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the Compute Flavours that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.3.4.4 Delete Compute Flavour operation

### 7.3.4.4.1 Description

This operation allows deleting a Compute Flavour.

Table 7.3.4.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.3.4.4.1-1: Delete Compute Flavour operation**

| Message                      | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| DeleteComputeFlavourRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| DeleteComputeFlavourResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.3.4.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.3.4.4.2-1.

**Table 7.3.4.4.2-1: Delete Compute Flavour operation input parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                                      |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| computeFlavourId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the Compute Flavour to be deleted. |

### 7.3.4.4.3 Output parameters

No output parameters.

### 7.3.4.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has deleted the Compute Flavour, so no new Virtualised Compute Resource can be allocated based on it. The already allocated Virtualised Compute Resources are not affected.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.4 Virtualised Network Interfaces

### 7.4.1 Virtualised Network Resources Management Interface

#### 7.4.1.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised network resources available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes operations for allocating, querying, updating and terminating virtualised network resources.

#### 7.4.1.2 Allocate Virtualised Network Resource operation

##### 7.4.1.2.1 Description

This operation allows requesting the allocation of virtualised network resources as indicated by the consumer functional block.

Table 7.4.1.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.1.2.1-1: Allocate Virtualised Network Resource operation**

| Message                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------------|-------------|------------|
| AllocateNetworkRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| AllocateNetworkResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.4.1.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.2.2-1.

**Table 7.4.1.2.2-1: Allocate Virtualised Network Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter           | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                | Description   |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|---|
| networkResourceName | M         | 0..1        | String                 | Name provided by the consumer for the virtualised network resource to be allocated. It can be used for identifying resources from consumer side.                            |
| reservationId       | M         | 0..1        | Identifier             | Identifier of the resource reservation applicable to this virtualised resource management operation.  |
| networkResourceType | M         | 0..1        | Enum                   | Type of virtualised network resource.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NETWORK</li> <li>• SUBNET</li> <li>• NETWORK_PORT</li> <li>• TRUNK</li> </ul>     |
| typeNetworkData     | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetworkData     | Provides information about the particular virtual network resource to be created. Cardinality can be "0" depending on the value of networkResourceType. See clause 8.4.4.2. |
| typeSubnetData      | M         | 0..1        | NetworkSubnetData      | Provides information about the particular sub-network resource to be created. Cardinality can be "0" depending on the value of networkResourceType. See clause 8.4.4.4.     |
| typeNetworkPortData | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetworkPortData | Provides information about the particular network port to be created. Cardinality can be "0" depending on the value of networkResourceType. See clause 8.4.4.5.             |

| Parameter                         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|--|
| typeTrunkData                     | M         | 0..1        | VirtualTrunkData                 | Provides information about the particular trunk to be created. Cardinality can be "0" depending on the value of networkResourceType. See clause 8.4.4.6.   |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityConstraints | M         | 0..N        | AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint | List of elements with affinity or anti affinity (see clause 8.4.8.2) information of the virtualised network resource to be allocated. All the listed constraints shall be fulfilled for a successful operation.  |
| locationConstraints               | M         | 0..1        | Not specified                    | If present, it defines location constraints for the resource(s) to be allocated, e.g. in what particular resource zone.  |
| metaData                          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                     | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.  |
| resourceGroupId                   | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                       | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain. Cardinality can be 0 if the consumer credentials are implicitly associated to a specific resource group. |

#### 7.4.1.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.2.3-1.

**Table 7.4.1.2.3-1: Allocate Virtualised Network Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content            | Description   |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------|---|
| networkData     | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetwork     | If network types are created satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the instantiated virtualised network resource. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include creation of such type of resource. See clause 8.4.5.2. |
| subnetData      | M         | 0..1        | NetworkSubnet      | If subnet types are created satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the allocated subnet. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include creation of such type of resource. See clause 8.4.5.3.                           |
| networkPortData | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetworkPort | If network port types are created satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the allocated network port. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include creation of such type of resource. See clause 8.4.5.4.               |
| trunkData       | M         | 0..1        | VirtualTrunk       | If trunk types are created satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the allocated trunk. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include creation of such type of resource. See clause 8.4.5.5.                             |

#### 7.4.1.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has created the internal management objects for the virtualised network resource and allocated this resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the newly instantiated virtualised network resource plus any additional information about the allocate request operation. The VIM may also return intermediate status reports during the allocation process.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

### 7.4.1.3 Query Virtualised Network Resource operation

#### 7.4.1.3.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about instantiated virtualised network resources.

Table 7.4.1.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.1.3.1-1: Query Virtualised Network Resource operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryNetworkRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryNetworkResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.4.1.3.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.3.2-1.

**Table 7.4.1.3.2-1: Query Virtualised Network Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter          | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| queryNetworkFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information, expressing the type of information to be retrieved. It can also be used to specify one or more resources to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

#### 7.4.1.3.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.3.3-1.

**Table 7.4.1.3.3-1: Query Virtualised Network Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description  |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|--|
| queryResult      | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetwork | Contains information about the virtual network resource(s) matching the filter. Cardinality can be "0" if no matching network resources exist. See clause 8.4.5.2. |
| queryTrunkResult | M         | 0..N        | VirtualTrunk   | Contains information about the virtual trunk(s) matching the filter. Cardinality can be "0" if no matching virtual trunk resources exist. See clause 8.4.5.5.      |

#### 7.4.1.3.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised network resources. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the network resources that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

### 7.4.1.4 Update Virtualised Network Resource operation

#### 7.4.1.4.1 Description

This operation allows updating the information of an instantiated virtualised network resource.

Table 7.4.1.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.1.4.1-1: Update Virtualised Network Resource operation**

| Message               | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------|
| UpdateNetworkRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| UpdateNetworkResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.4.1.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.4.2-1.

**Table 7.4.1.4.2-1: Update Virtualised Network Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|---|
| networkResourceId | M         | 1           | Identifier             | Identifier of the virtualised network resource to be updated.   |
| updateNetworkData | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetworkData     | If update is on a network resource, the element contains the fields that can be updated.<br>See clause 8.4.4.2.             |
| updateSubnetData  | M         | 0..1        | NetworkSubnetData      | If update is on a subnet resource, the element contains the fields that can be updated.<br>See clause 8.4.4.4.              |
| updateNetworkPort | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetworkPortData | If update is on a network port, the element contains the fields that can be updated.<br>See clause 8.4.4.5.                 |
| metaData          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair           | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource. |
| updateTrunkData   | M         | 0..1        | UpdateTrunkData        | If update is on a trunk resource, the element contains the fields that can be updated. See clause 8.4.4.8.                  |

#### 7.4.1.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.4.3-1.

**Table 7.4.1.4.3-1: Update Virtualised Network Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content            | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------|--|
| networkResourceId | M         | 1           | Identifier         | Identifier of the virtualised network resource that has been updated. This parameter has the same value as the input parameter.  |
| networkData       | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetwork     | If network types are updated satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the updated network. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include update of such type of resource.<br>See clause 8.4.5.2.           |
| subnetData        | M         | 0..1        | NetworkSubnet      | If subnet types are updated satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the updated subnet. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include update of such type of resource.<br>See clause 8.4.5.3.             |
| networkPortData   | M         | 0..1        | VirtualNetworkPort | If network port types are updated satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the updated network port. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include update of such type of resource.<br>See clause 8.4.5.4. |
| trunkData         | M         | 0..1        | VirtualTrunk       | If a trunk resource is updated satisfactorily, it contains the data relative to the updated trunk. Cardinality can be "0" if the request did not include update of such type of resource. See clause 8.4.5.5.              |

#### 7.4.1.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised network resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the updated virtualised network resource plus any additional information about the update request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

#### 7.4.1.5 Terminate Virtualised Network Resource operation

##### 7.4.1.5.1 Description

This operation allows de-allocating and terminating one or more an instantiated virtualised network resource(s).

When the operation is done on multiple ids, it is assumed to be best-effort, i.e. it can succeed for a subset of the ids, and fail for the remaining ones.

Table 7.4.1.5.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.1.5.1-1: Terminate Virtualised Network Resource operation**

| Message                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------|
| TerminateNetworkRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| TerminateNetworkResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.4.1.5.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.5.2-1.

**Table 7.4.1.5.2-1: Terminate Virtualised Network Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| networkResourceId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised network resource(s) to be terminated. |

##### 7.4.1.5.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.5.3-1.

**Table 7.4.1.5.3-1: Terminate Virtualised Network Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| networkResourceId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised network resource(s) successfully terminated. |

#### 7.4.1.5.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has terminated the virtualised network resources and removed the internal management objects for those resources. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the terminated virtualised network resource plus any additional information about the terminate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.4.1.6 Create Virtualised Network Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation

### 7.4.1.6.1 Description

This operation allows an authorized consumer functional block to request the creation of a resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group. An anti-affinity group contains resources that are not placed in proximity, e.g. that do not share the same physical networking device. An affinity group contains resources that are placed in proximity, e.g. that do share the same physical networking device.

This operation shall be supported by the VIM. It shall be supported by the VNFM, if the VNFM supports named resource groups for affinity/anti-affinity (see clause 8.4.8.1).

Table 7.4.1.6.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.1.6.1-1: Create Virtualised Network Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation**

| Message   | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| CreateNetworkResourceAffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraintsGroupRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| CreateNetworkResourceAffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraintsGroupResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.4.1.6.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.6.2-1.

**Table 7.4.1.6.2-1: Create Virtualised Network Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| groupName | M         | 1           | String  | Name of the group, given by the consumer.  |
| type      | M         | 1           | Enum    | Indicates whether this is an affinity or anti-affinity group.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AFFINITY</li> <li>• ANTI_AFFINITY</li> </ul>                    |
| scope     | M         | 0..1        | Enum    | Qualifies the scope of the constraint.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NFVI_NODE</li> <li>• NIC</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul> Defaults to "NFVI_NODE" if absent. |

### 7.4.1.6.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.1.6.3-1.

**Table 7.4.1.6.3-1: Create Virtualised Network Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description              |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------------------|
| groupId   | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the group. |

### 7.4.1.6.4 Operation results

On success, the requested resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group has been created. On failure, appropriate error information is returned.

## 7.4.2 Virtualised Network Resources Change Notification Interface

### 7.4.2.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request subscription to virtualised network resources change notifications and to provide such notification to the subscribed consumer. As such, it provides the notification part of the Virtualised Network Resource Management interface.

### 7.4.2.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.4.2.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to subscribe with a filter for the notifications related to virtualised network resource changes on virtualised resources sent by the VIM. Specification of filtering mechanism is part of the protocol design.

Table 7.4.2.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.2.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.4.2.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.2.2.2-1.

**Table 7.4.2.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| inputFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting the virtualised resource(s) or virtual resource group(s) and the related change notifications to subscribe to. This filter can contain information about specific types of changes to subscribe to or attributes of the resource. |

#### 7.4.2.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.2.2.3-1.

**Table 7.4.2.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

#### 7.4.2.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to network resource changes on virtualised network resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

### 7.4.2.3 Notify operation

#### 7.4.2.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.4.2.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.2.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification is sent by this operation:

- VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification. See clause 8.4.9.

## 7.4.3 Virtualised Network Resources Information Management Interface

### 7.4.3.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request operations related to the information about consumable virtualised network resources. The consumable virtualised network resources include (not limited to) virtualised NIC, floating IP addresses, etc. which are managed by VIM.

The parameters related to consumable virtualised network resources describe the types and characteristics of the virtualised resources that a consumer functional block can request for allocation as part of the Virtualised Network Resource Management interface.

The following operations are defined for this interface:

- 1) Subscribe resources information changes operation.
- 2) Notify resources information changes operation.
- 3) Query resources information operation.

### 7.4.3.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.4.3.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFMs to subscribe for the notifications related to information changes about consumable virtualised network resources. This also enables the VNFM to specify the scope of the subscription in terms of the specific virtual network resources to be reported by the VIM using a filter as the input.

Table 7.4.3.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.3.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.4.3.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.3.2.2-1.

**Table 7.4.3.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting notifications. The filter can be on resource, type of notification or attribute of the notification. |

### 7.4.3.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.3.2.3-1.

**Table 7.4.3.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

### 7.4.3.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to information changes about consumable virtualised network resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

### 7.4.3.3 Notify operation

#### 7.4.3.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.4.3.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.3.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification can be notified/sent by this operation:

- InformationChangeNotification. See clause 8.3.2.

### 7.4.3.4 Query Virtualised Network Resource Information operation

#### 7.4.3.4.1 Description

This operation supports retrieval of information for the various types of virtualised network resources managed by the VIM.

Table 7.4.3.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.4.3.4.1-1: Query Virtualised Network Resource Information operation**

| Message                                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| QueryVirtualNetworkResourceInfoRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryVirtualNetworkResourceInfoResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.4.3.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.3.4.2-1.

**Table 7.4.3.4.2-1: Query Virtualised Network Resource Information operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| informationQueryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter defining the information of consumable virtualised resources on which the query applies. |

#### 7.4.3.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.4.3.4.3-1.

**Table 7.4.3.4.3-1: Query Virtualised Network Resource Information operation output parameters**

| Parameter                      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                           | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| virtualisedResourceInformation | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkResourceInformation | Virtualised network resources information in the VIM that satisfies the query condition.<br>See clause 8.3.5. |

#### 7.4.3.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has run the query for information about the various types of virtualised network resources it managed. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the various types of virtualised network resources managed by the VIM and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.5 Virtualised Storage Interfaces

### 7.5.1 Virtualised Storage Resources Management Interface

#### 7.5.1.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised storage resources available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes operations for allocating, querying, updating and terminating virtualised storage resources as well as operations for scaling, migrating and operating the administrative status of a virtualised storage resource.

#### 7.5.1.2 Allocate Virtualised Storage Resource operation

##### 7.5.1.2.1 Description

This operation allows requesting the allocation of virtualised storage resources as indicated by the consumer functional block.

Table 7.5.1.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.2.1-1: Allocate Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------------|-------------|------------|
| AllocateStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| AllocateStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.5.1.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.2.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.2.2-1: Allocate Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter                         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|--|
| storageName                       | M         | 0..1        | String                           | Name provided by the consumer for the virtualised storage resource to be allocated. It can be used for identifying resources from consumer side.   |
| reservationId                     | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                       | Identifier of the resource reservation applicable to this virtualised resource management operation.   |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityConstraints | M         | 0..N        | AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint | List of elements with affinity or anti affinity (see clause 8.4.8.2) information of the virtualised storage resource to be allocated. All the listed constraints shall be fulfilled for a successful operation.  |
| storageData                       | M         | 1           | VirtualStorageFlavour            | Provides information about the type and size of the storage. See clause 8.4.6.2.   |
| locationConstraints               | M         | 0..1        | Not specified                    | If present, it defines location constraints for the resource(s) to be allocated, e.g. in what particular resource zone.  |
| metaData                          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                     | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.  |
| resourceGroupId                   | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                       | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain. Cardinality can be 0 if the consumer credentials are implicitly associated to a specific resource group. |

### 7.5.1.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.2.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.2.3-1: Allocate Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description  |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|--|
| storageResource | M         | 1           | VirtualStorage | Contains information of the newly instantiated virtualised storage resource. See clause 8.4.7.2. |

### 7.5.1.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has created the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resource and allocated this resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the newly instantiated virtualised storage resource plus any additional information about the allocate request operation. The VIM may also return intermediate status reports during the allocation process.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.5.1.3 Query Virtualised Storage Resource operation

### 7.5.1.3.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about instantiated virtualised storage resources.

Table 7.5.1.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.3.1-1: Query Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.5.1.3.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.3.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.3.2-1: Query Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter          | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| storageQueryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information expressing the type of information to be retrieved.<br>It can also be used to specify one or more resources to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.5.1.3.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.3.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.3.3-1: Query Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | VirtualStorage | Contains information about the virtual storage resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching storage resources exist.<br>See clause 8.4.7.2. |

### 7.5.1.3.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resources. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the storage resources that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.5.1.4 Update Virtualised Storage Resource operation

### 7.5.1.4.1 Description

This operation allows updating the configuration and/or parameters of an instantiated virtualised storage resource, including updating its metadata.

Table 7.5.1.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.4.1-1: Update Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message               | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------|
| UpdateStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| UpdateStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.5.1.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.4.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.4.2-1: Update Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content               | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|--|
| storageId         | M         | 1           | Identifier            | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource to be updated.  |
| updateStorageData | M         | 0..1        | VirtualStorageFlavour | Contains the fields that can be updated of a storage resource.<br>See clause 8.4.6.2.  |
| metaData          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair          | List of meta-data key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource. |

#### 7.5.1.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.4.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.4.3-1: Update Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| storageId   | M         | 1           | Identifier     | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource that has been updated. This parameter has the same value as the input parameter. |
| storageData | M         | 1           | VirtualStorage | Contains the data relative to the updated storage.<br>See clause 8.4.7.2.   |

#### 7.5.1.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the updated virtualised storage resource plus any additional information about the update request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

### 7.5.1.5 Terminate Virtualised Storage Resource operation

#### 7.5.1.5.1 Description

This operation allows de-allocating and terminating one or more instantiated virtualised storage resource(s).

When the operation is done on multiple ids, it is assumed to be best-effort, i.e. it can succeed for a subset of the ids, and fail for the remaining ones.

Table 7.5.1.5.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.5.1-1: Terminate Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------|
| TerminateStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| TerminateStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.5.1.5.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.5.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.5.2-1: Terminate Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| storageId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource(s) to be terminated. |

### 7.5.1.5.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.5.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.5.3-1: Terminate Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| storageId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource(s) successfully terminated. |

### 7.5.1.5.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has terminated the virtualised storage resources and removed the internal management objects for those resources. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the terminated virtualised storage resource plus any additional information about the terminate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.5.1.6 Operate Virtualised Storage Resource operation

### 7.5.1.6.1 Description

This operation allows executing specific operation command on instantiated virtualised storage resources.

Table 7.5.1.6.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.6.1-1: Operate Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| OperateStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| OperateStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.5.1.6.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.6.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.6.2-1: Operate Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter                 | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description   |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| storageId                 | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource to be operated.  |
| storageOperation          | M         | 1           | String        | Type of operation to perform on the virtualised storage resource. Possible values include: "create snapshot", "revert to snapshot", and "delete snapshot".                        |
| storageOperationInputData | M         | 0..N        | KeyValue Pair | Additional parameters associated to the operation to perform. For example, if the operation is "delete snapshot", information identifying the snapshot to be deleted is provided. |

### 7.5.1.6.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.6.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.6.3-1: Operate Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter                      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content          | Description   |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------|---|
| storageData                    | M         | 1           | VirtualStorage   | Contains information on the new status of the operated virtualised storage resource.<br>See clause 8.4.7.2.   |
| storageOperation<br>OutputData | M         | 0..N        | KeyValue<br>Pair | Set of output values depending on the type of operation.<br>For instance, when a snapshot operation is requested, this field provides information about the identifier of the snapshot. |

#### 7.5.1.6.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has executed the requested operation command on the virtualised storage resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the new status of the operated virtualised storage resources, operation specific data plus any additional information about the operate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

#### 7.5.1.7 Scale Virtualised Storage Resource operation

##### 7.5.1.7.1 Description

This operation allows resizing an instantiated virtualised storage resource.

Table 7.5.1.7.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.7.1-1: Scale Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| ScaleStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| ScaleStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.5.1.7.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.7.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.7.2-1: Scale Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| storageId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource to be scaled. |
| newSize   | M         | 1           | Number     | Resized amount of allocated storage virtualised resource.    |

##### 7.5.1.7.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.7.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.7.3-1: Scale Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| storageData | M         | 1           | VirtualStorage | Contains information of the scaled virtualised storage resource.<br>See clause 8.4.7.2. |

##### 7.5.1.7.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resource and has scaled this resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the scaled virtualised storage resource plus any additional information about the scale request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.5.1.8 Migrate Virtualised Storage Resource operation

### 7.5.1.8.1 Description

This operation allows migrating instantiated virtualised storage resources from one storage location to another. For instance, the operation performs the migration of a volume resource from one physical machine (host) to another physical machine.

Table 7.5.1.8.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.8.1-1: Migrate Virtualised Storage Resource operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| MigrateStorageRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| MigrateStorageResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.5.1.8.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.8.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.8.2-1: Migrate Virtualised Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter                         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|--|
| storageId                         | M         | 1           | Identifier                       | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource to be migrated.   |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityConstraints | CM        | 0..N        | AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint | List of elements with affinity or anti affinity (see clause 8.4.8.2) information of the virtualised compute resource to be migrated. All the listed constraints shall be fulfilled for a successful operation. This information is only necessary if the VIM needs to maintain affinity during the migration operation based on a list of resources. |
| migrationConstraint               | M         | 1           | Not specified                    | When present, the migration constraint parameter gives indications on where to migrate the resource, e.g. to a specific resource zone or to a specific host.   |

### 7.5.1.8.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.8.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.8.3-1: Migrate Virtualised Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content        | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------|---|
| storageData | M         | 1           | VirtualStorage | Contains information of the migrated virtualised storage resource.<br>See clause 8.4.7.2. |

### 7.5.1.8.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has updated the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resource and has migrated this resource. In addition, the VIM shall return to the VNFM information on the migrated virtualised storage resource plus any additional information about the migrate request operation.

If the operation was not successful, the VIM shall return to the VNFM appropriate error information.

## 7.5.1.9 Create Virtualised Storage Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation

### 7.5.1.9.1 Description

This operation allows an authorized consumer functional block to request the creation of a resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group. An anti-affinity group contains resources that are not placed in proximity, e.g. that do not share the same physical storage node. An affinity group contains resources that are placed in proximity, e.g. that do share the same physical storage node.

This operation shall be supported by the VIM. It shall be supported by the VNFM, if the VNFM supports named resource groups for affinity/anti-affinity (see clause 8.4.8.1).

Table 7.5.1.9.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.1.9.1-1: Create Virtualised Storage Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation**

| Message   | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| CreateStorageResourceAffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraintsGroupRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| CreateStorageResourceAffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraintsGroupResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.5.1.9.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.9.2-1.

**Table 7.5.1.9.2-1: Create Virtualised Storage Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| groupName | M         | 1           | String  | Name of the group, given by the consumer.   |
| type      | M         | 1           | Enum    | Indicates whether this is an affinity or anti-affinity group.<br>VALUES:<br>• AFFINITY<br>• ANTI_AFFINITY                 |
| scope     | M         | 0..1        | Enum    | Qualifies the scope of the affinity constraint.<br>VALUES:<br>• NFVI_NODE<br>• etc.<br>Defaults to "NFVI_NODE" if absent. |

### 7.5.1.9.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.1.9.3-1.

**Table 7.5.1.9.3-1: Create Virtualised Storage Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description              |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|--------------------------|
| groupId   | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the group. |

### 7.5.1.9.4 Operation results

On success, the requested resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group has been created. On failure, appropriate error information is returned.

## 7.5.2 Virtualised Storage Resources Change Notification Interface

### 7.5.2.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request subscription to virtualised storage resources change notifications and to provide such notification to the subscribed consumer. As such, it provides the notification part of the Virtualised Storage Resource Management interface.

### 7.5.2.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.5.2.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to subscribe with a filter for the notifications related to virtualised storage resource changes on virtualised resources sent by the VIM. Specification of filtering mechanism is part of the protocol design.

Table 7.5.2.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.2.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.5.2.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.2.2.2-1.

**Table 7.5.2.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| inputFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting the virtualised resource(s) or virtual resource group(s) and the related change notifications to subscribe to. This filter can contain information about specific types of changes to subscribe to or attributes of the resource. |

#### 7.5.2.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.2.2.3-1.

**Table 7.5.2.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

#### 7.5.2.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to storage resource changes on virtualised storage resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

### 7.5.2.3 Notify operation

#### 7.5.2.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.5.2.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.2.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification is sent by this operation:

- VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification. See clause 8.4.9.

## 7.5.3 Virtualised Storage Resources Information Management Interface

### 7.5.3.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request operations related to the information about consumable virtualised storage resources which are managed by a VIM.

The parameters related to consumable virtualised storage resources describe the types and characteristics of the virtualised resources that a consumer functional block can request for allocation as part of the Virtualised Storage Resource Management interface.

The following operations are defined for this interface:

- 1) Subscribe resources information changes operation.
- 2) Notify resources information changes operation.
- 3) Query resources information operation.

### 7.5.3.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.5.3.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFMs to subscribe for the notifications related to information changes about consumable virtualised storage resources. This also enables the VNFM to specify the scope of the subscription in terms of the specific virtual storage resources to be reported by the VIM using a filter as the input.

Table 7.5.3.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.3.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.5.3.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.3.2.2-1.

**Table 7.5.3.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting notifications. The filter can be on resource, type of notification or attribute of the notification. |

### 7.5.3.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.3.2.3-1.

**Table 7.5.3.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

### 7.5.3.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to information changes about consumable virtualised storage resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

### 7.5.3.3 Notify operation

#### 7.5.3.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.5.3.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.3.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification can be notified/sent by this operation:

- InformationChangeNotification. See clause 8.3.2.

### 7.5.3.4 Query Virtualised Storage Resources Information operation

#### 7.5.3.4.1 Description

This operation supports retrieval of information for the various types of virtualised storage resources managed by the VIM.

Table 7.5.3.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.5.3.4.1-1: Query Virtualised Storage Resources Information operation**

| Message                                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| QueryVirtualStorageResourceInfoRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryVirtualStorageResourceInfoResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.5.3.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.3.4.2-1.

**Table 7.5.3.4.2-1: Query Virtualised Storage Resources Information operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| informationQueryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter defining the information of consumable virtualised resources on which the query applies. |

### 7.5.3.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.5.3.4.3-1.

**Table 7.5.3.4.3-1: Query Virtualised Storage Resources Information operation output parameters**

| Parameter                      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                           | Description  |
|--------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| virtualisedResourceInformation | M         | 0..N        | VirtualStorageResourceInformation | Virtualised storage resources information in the VIM that satisfies the query condition. See clause 8.3.4. |

### 7.5.3.4.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has run the query for the various types of virtualised storage resources. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about for the various types of virtualised storage resources that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.6 Virtualised Resources Fault Management Interface

### 7.6.1 Description

This interface shall allow providing alarms from the VIM resulting from the faults related to the virtualised resources visible to the consumer functional block, including virtualised container crashes, virtual network ports errors, virtual container to storage disconnection, etc. The interface also provides information about faults related to the pools of resources, for instance, reserved resources unavailable, resource exhaustion, etc. It should be noted that only those types of resources that have been catalogued and offered through right abstractions to consumer functional blocks are in scope. The fault management interface shall support the following operations:

- 1) Subscribe operation (Subscription of VNFMs with the VIM for the notifications related to the alarms resulting from the Faults).
- 2) Notify operation (Notifications of alarms or alarm state change from VIM to VNFM).
- 3) Get alarm list operation (Accessing active alarms from the VIM).

### 7.6.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.6.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFMs to subscribe for the notifications related to the alarms and their state changes resulting from the virtualised resources faults with the VIM. This also enables the VNFM to specify the scope of the subscription in terms of the specific alarms for the virtualised resources to be reported by the VIM using a filter as the input.

Table 7.6.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.6.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.6.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.6.2.2-1.

**Table 7.6.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting virtualised resources and related alarms. This can contain the resource information, severity and cause of the alarm. |

### 7.6.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.6.2.3-1.

**Table 7.6.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

### 7.6.2.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) in the subscribeResponse message whether the subscription was successful or not.

## 7.6.3 Notify operation

### 7.6.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.6.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.6.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notifications can be published/notified/sent by this operation:

- AlarmNotification. See clause 8.6.2.
- AlarmClearedNotification. See clause 8.6.3.

## 7.6.4 Get Alarm List operation

### 7.6.4.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFMs to query the active alarms from the VIM.

Table 7.6.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.6.4.1-1: Get Alarm List operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| GetAlarmListRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| GetAlarmListResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.6.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.6.4.2-1.

**Table 7.6.4.2-1: Get Alarm List operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting alarms. This can contain the list of the resource IDs, severity and cause. |

### 7.6.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.6.4.3-1.

**Table 7.6.4.3-1: Get Alarm List operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| alarm     | M         | 0..N        | Alarm   | Information about an alarm including alarmId, affected resourceId, and faultDetails. The cardinality can be "0" to indicate that no Alarm could be retrieved based on the input Filter information (e.g. no matching alarm).<br>See clause 8.6.4. |

### 7.6.4.4 Operation results

The result of the operation indicates if it has been successful or not with a standard success/error result.

For a particular request, only alarms matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

## 7.7 Virtualised Resources Performance Management Interface

### 7.7.1 Description

This interface allows providing performance management (measurement results collection and notifications) related to virtualised resources including (not limited to) resource consumption level, e.g. vCPU power consumption, VM memory usage oversubscription, VM disk latency, etc. It has to be noted that only types of resources that have been catalogued and offered through right abstractions to consumer functional blocks are in scope.

Collection and reporting of performance information is controlled by a PM job that groups details of performance collection and reporting information.

When new performance information is available, the consumer is notified using the notification PerformanceInformationAvailableNotification (see clause 8.5.8). The details of the performance measurements are provided using the PerformanceReport information element (see clause 8.5.5). Delivery mechanism for the performance reports is not specified in the present document.

The following operations are defined for this interface which will be consumed by the VNFM:

- 1) Create PM Job operation.
- 2) Delete PM Jobs operation.
- 3) Query PM Job operation.

- 4) Subscribe operation.
- 5) Notify operation.
- 6) Create Threshold operation.
- 7) Delete Thresholds operation.
- 8) Query Threshold operation.

## 7.7.2 Create PM Job operation

### 7.7.2.1 Description

This operation will create a PM job, enabling a VNFM to specify a resource or set of resources, that the VIM is managing, for which it wants to receive performance information. This will allow the requesting VNFM to specify its performance information requirements with the VIM.

The VNFM needs to be subscribed to receive PerformanceInformationAvailable notifications in order to know when new collected performance information is available.

Table 7.7.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.2.1-1: Create PM Job operation**

| Message             | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------------------|-------------|------------|
| CreatePmJobRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| CreatePmJobResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.2.2-1.

**Table 7.7.2.2-1: Create PM Job operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier   | Cardinality | Content         | Description   |
|------------------------|---|-------------|-----------------|---|
| resourceSelector       | M   | 1           | ObjectSelection | Defines the resources for which performance information is requested to be collected. See clause 8.5.2.   |
| performanceMetric      | CM  | 0..N        | String          | Defines the type of performance metric(s) for the specified resources. At least one of the two (performance metric or group) shall be present.  |
| performanceMetricGroup | CM  | 0..N        | String          | Group of performance metrics. A metric group is a pre-defined list of metrics, known to the producer that it can decompose to individual metrics. At least one of the two (performance metric or group) shall be present. |
| collectionPeriod       | M   | 1           | Not specified   | Specifies the periodicity at which the VIM will collect performance information. See note.  |
| reportingPeriod        | M   | 1           | Not specified   | Specifies the periodicity at which the VIM will report to the VNFM about performance information. See note.   |
| reportingBoundary      | O   | 0..1        | Not specified   | Specifies a boundary after which the reporting will stop. The boundary shall allow a single reporting as well as periodic reporting up to the boundary.   |
| NOTE:                  | At the end of each reportingPeriod, the VIM will inform VNFM about availability of the performance data collected for each completed collection period during this reportingPeriod. While the exact definition of the types for collectionPeriod and reportingPeriod is part of the protocol design, it is recommended that the reportingPeriod be equal or a multiple of the collectionPeriod. In the latter case, the performance data for the collection periods within one reporting period would be reported together. |             |                 |   |

### 7.7.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.2.3-1.

**Table 7.7.2.3-1: Create PM Job operation output parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                       |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| pmJobId   | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the created PM job. |

### 7.7.2.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) whether or not the PM job was successfully created.

## 7.7.3 Query PM Job operation

### 7.7.3.1 Description

This operation will enable the VNFM to solicit from the VIM the details of one or more PM job(s).

This operation is not returning performance reports.

Table 7.7.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.3.1-1: Query PM Job operation**

| Message            | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryPmJobRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryPmJobResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.3.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.3.2-1.

**Table 7.7.3.2-1: Query PM Job operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| queryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter defining the PM Jobs on which the query applies. It can also be used to specify one or more PM Jobs to be queried, by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.7.3.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.3.3-1.

**Table 7.7.3.3-1: Query PM Job operation output parameters**

| Parameter    | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| pmJobDetails | M         | 0..N        | PmJob   | Details of PM jobs matching the input filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching PM Jobs exist. See clause 8.5.3. |

### 7.7.3.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has run the query for PM job details. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the PM jobs that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.7.4 Delete PM Jobs operation

### 7.7.4.1 Description

This operation will delete one or more PM job(s).

Table 7.7.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.4.1-1: Delete PM Jobs operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| DeletePmJobsRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| DeletePmJobsResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.4.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.4.2-1.

**Table 7.7.4.2-1: Delete PM Jobs operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                               |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| pmJobId   | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifiers of the PM jobs to be deleted. |

### 7.7.4.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.4.3-1.

**Table 7.7.4.3-1: Delete PM Jobs operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                                      |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| deletedPmJobId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifiers of the PM jobs successfully deleted. |

### 7.7.4.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) whether or not all the selected PM jobs were successfully deleted.

## 7.7.5 Subscribe operation

### 7.7.5.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFMs to subscribe for the notifications related to performance information with the VIM. This also enables the VNFM to specify the scope of the subscription in terms of the specific virtual resources to be reported by the VIM using a filter as the input.

NOTE 1: Specification of filtering mechanism is part of the protocol design.

NOTE 2: It is left to the protocol design stage whether subscribing is represented as a separate "Subscribe" operation or whether subscription-related information is managed as part of managing PM jobs and Thresholds.

Table 7.7.5.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.5.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.5.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.5.2-1.

**Table 7.7.5.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting notifications. The filter can be on resource, type of notification or attribute of the notification. |

### 7.7.5.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.5.3-1.

**Table 7.7.5.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

### 7.7.5.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to performance information sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

## 7.7.6 Notify operation

### 7.7.6.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.7.6.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.6.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notifications can be notified/sent by this operation:

- PerformanceInformationAvailableNotification. See clause 8.5.8.
- ThresholdCrossedNotification. See clause 8.5.9.

## 7.7.7 Create Threshold operation

### 7.7.7.1 Description

This operation will allow the VNFM to create a threshold to specify threshold levels on specified performance metric and resource(s) for which notifications will be generated when crossed.

Creating a threshold does not trigger collection of metrics. In order for the threshold to be active, there needs to be a PM job collecting the needed metric for the selected entities.

Table 7.7.7.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.7.1-1: Create Threshold operation**

| Message                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------------|-------------|------------|
| CreateThresholdRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| CreateThresholdResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.7.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.7.2-1.

**Table 7.7.7.2-1: Create Threshold operation input parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content         | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|---|
| resourceSelector  | M         | 1..N        | ObjectSelection | Defines the resources for which the threshold is to be defined.<br>See clause 8.5.2.  |
| performanceMetric | M         | 1           | String          | Defines the performance metric on which the threshold is to be defined.   |
| thresholdType     | M         | 1           | Enum            | Defines the type of threshold. The list of possible values is part of the protocol design and might include: single/multi valued threshold, static/dynamic threshold, template based threshold.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SIMPLE: Single-valued static threshold</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul> |
| thresholdDetails  | M         | 1           | Not specified   | Details of the threshold: value to be crossed, and direction in which it is crossed, details on the notification to be generated.   |

### 7.7.7.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.7.3-1.

**Table 7.7.7.3-1: Create Threshold operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                      |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|----------------------------------|
| thresholdId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of created threshold. |

### 7.7.7.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) whether or not the threshold was successfully created.

## 7.7.8 Query Threshold operation

### 7.7.8.1 Description

This operation will allow the VNFM to query the details of an existing threshold.

Table 7.7.8.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.8.1-1: Query Threshold operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryThresholdRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryThresholdResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.8.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.8.2-1.

**Table 7.7.8.2-1: Query Threshold operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| queryFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter defining the thresholds on which the query applies. It can also be used to specify one or more thresholds to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.7.8.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.8.3-1.

**Table 7.7.8.3-1: Query Threshold operation output parameters**

| Parameter       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content   | Description   |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|---|
| thresholdDetail | M         | 0..N        | Threshold | List of threshold details matching the input filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching threshold details exist. See clause 8.5.4. |

### 7.7.8.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has run the query for threshold details. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the threshold details that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.7.9 Delete Thresholds operation

### 7.7.9.1 Description

This operation will allow the VNFM to delete one or more existing threshold(s).

Table 7.7.9.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.7.9.1-1: Delete Thresholds operation**

| Message                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------|
| DeleteThresholdsRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| DeleteThresholdsResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.7.9.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.9.2-1.

**Table 7.7.9.2-1: Delete Thresholds operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| thresholdId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifiers of thresholds to be deleted. |

### 7.7.9.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.7.9.3-1.

**Table 7.7.9.3-1: Delete Thresholds operation output parameters**

| Parameter          | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| deletedThresholdId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Identifiers of the thresholds that have been deleted successfully. |

#### 7.7.9.4 Operation results

As a result of this operation, the producer (VIM) shall indicate to the consumer (VNFM) whether or not all the selected thresholds were successfully deleted.

## 7.8 Virtualised Resource Reservation Interfaces

### 7.8.1 Virtualised Compute Resources Reservation Management Interface

#### 7.8.1.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised compute resources reservations available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes an operation for querying reservations on virtualised compute resources.

#### 7.8.1.2 Query Compute Resource Reservation operation

##### 7.8.1.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about reserved compute resources that the consumer has access to.

Table 7.8.1.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.8.1.2.1-1: Query Compute Resource Reservation operation**

| Message                                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| QueryComputeResourceReservationRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryComputeResourceReservationResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.8.1.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.1.2.2-1.

**Table 7.8.1.2.2-1: Query Compute Resource Reservation operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| queryReservationFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information expressing the type of information to be retrieved. It can also be used to specify one or more reservations to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

##### 7.8.1.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.1.2.3-1.

**Table 7.8.1.2.3-1: Query Compute Resource Reservation operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | ReservedVirtualCompute | Contains information about the reserved resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching reservation exists. See clause 8.7.2. |

#### 7.8.1.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resource reservations. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the compute resource reservations that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.8.2 Virtualised Network Resources Reservation Management Interface

### 7.8.2.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised network resources reservations available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes an operation for querying reservations on virtualised network resources.

### 7.8.2.2 Query Network Resource Reservation operation

#### 7.8.2.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about reserved network resources that the consumer has access to.

Table 7.8.2.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.8.2.2.1-1: Query Network Resource Reservation operation**

| Message                                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| QueryNetworkResourceReservationRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryNetworkResourceReservationResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.8.2.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.2.2.2-1.

**Table 7.8.2.2.2-1: Query Network Resource Reservation operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| queryReservationFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information expressing the type of information to be retrieved. It can also be used to specify one or more reservations to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

#### 7.8.2.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.2.2.3-1.

**Table 7.8.2.2.3-1: Query Network Resource Reservation operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | ReservedVirtualNetwork | Contains information about the reserved resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching reservation exists. See clause 8.7.4.2. |

#### 7.8.2.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised network resource reservations. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the network resource reservations that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

### 7.8.3 Virtualised Storage Resources Reservation Management Interface

#### 7.8.3.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised storage resources reservations available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes an operation for querying reservations on virtualised storage resources.

#### 7.8.3.2 Query Storage Resource Reservation operation

##### 7.8.3.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about reserved storage resources that the consumer has access to.

Table 7.8.3.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.8.3.2.1-1: Query Storage Resource Reservation operation**

| Message                                 | Requirement | Direction  |
|---|-------------|------------|
| QueryStorageResourceReservationRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryStorageResourceReservationResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.8.3.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.3.2.2-1.

**Table 7.8.3.2.2-1: Query Storage Resource Reservation operation input parameters**

| Parameter              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| queryReservationFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information, expressing the type of information to be retrieved. It can also be used to specify one or more reservations to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

##### 7.8.3.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.3.2.3-1.

**Table 7.8.3.2.3-1: Query Storage Resource Reservation operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | ReservedVirtualStorage | Contains information about the reserved resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching reservation exists. See clause 8.7.6.2. |

#### 7.8.3.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resource reservations. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the storage resource reservations that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

### 7.8.4 Virtualised Resources Reservation Change Notification Interface

#### 7.8.4.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request subscription to changes on reservation of virtualised resources, and to provide such notification to the subscribed consumer. As such, it provides the notification part of the Virtualised Resources Reservation Management interfaces.

#### 7.8.4.2 Subscribe operation

##### 7.8.4.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to subscribe with a filter for the notifications related to reservations on virtualised resources sent by the VIM. Specification of filtering mechanism is part of the protocol design.

Table 7.8.4.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.8.4.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.8.4.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.4.2.2-1.

**Table 7.8.4.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| inputFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting the virtualised resource(s) and the related change notifications to subscribe to. This filter can contain information about specific attributes of the resource or of the reservation. |

##### 7.8.4.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.8.4.2.3-1.

**Table 7.8.4.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

#### 7.8.4.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to changes on reservation of virtualised resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

#### 7.8.4.3 Notify operation

##### 7.8.4.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.8.4.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.8.4.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification is sent by this operation:

- VirtualisedResourceReservationChangeNotification. See clause 8.7.7.

## 7.9 Virtualised Resource Quota Interfaces

### 7.9.1 Virtualised Compute Resources Quota Management Interface

#### 7.9.1.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised compute resources quotas available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes operations for querying quotas on virtualised compute resources.

#### 7.9.1.2 Query Compute Resource Quota operation

##### 7.9.1.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying quota information about compute resources that the consumer has access to.

Table 7.9.1.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.9.1.2.1-1: Query Compute Resource Quota operation**

| Message                           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryComputeResourceQuotaRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryComputeResourceQuotaResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

##### 7.9.1.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.1.2.2-1.

**Table 7.9.1.2.2-1: Query Compute Resource Quota operation input parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| queryQuotaFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information expressing the type of information to be retrieved.<br>It can also be used to specify one or more quotas to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.9.1.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.1.2.3-1.

**Table 7.9.1.2.3-1: Query Compute Resource Quota operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content             | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | VirtualComputeQuota | Contains information about the quota resource. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching quota exists. See clause 8.8.2.2. |

### 7.9.1.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised compute resource quotas. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the compute resource quotas that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.9.2 Virtualised Network Resources Quota Management Interface

### 7.9.2.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised network resources quotas available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes operations for querying quotas on virtualised network resources.

### 7.9.2.2 Query Network Resource Quota operation

#### 7.9.2.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about quota network resources that the consumer has access to.

Table 7.9.2.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.9.2.2.1-1: Query Network Resource Quota operation**

| Message                           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryNetworkResourceQuotaRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryNetworkResourceQuotaResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.9.2.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.2.2.2-1.

**Table 7.9.2.2-1: Query Network Resource Quota operation input parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| queryQuotaFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information, expressing the type of information to be retrieved.<br>It can also be used to specify one or more quotas to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.9.2.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.2.2.3-1.

**Table 7.9.2.2.3-1: Query Network Resource Quota operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content             | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkQuota | Contains information about the quota resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching quota exists.<br>See clause 8.8.3.2. |

### 7.9.2.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised network resource quotas. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the network resource quotas that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.9.3 Virtualised Storage Resources Quota Management Interface

### 7.9.3.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to perform operations on virtualised storage resources quotas available to the consumer functional block. The interface includes operations for querying quotas on virtualised storage resources.

### 7.9.3.2 Query Storage Resource operation

#### 7.9.3.2.1 Description

This operation allows querying information about quota resources that the consumer has access to.

Table 7.9.3.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.9.3.2.1-1: Query Storage Resource operation**

| Message                           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryStorageResourceQuotaRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryStorageResourceQuotaResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.9.3.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.3.2.2-1.

**Table 7.9.3.2.2-1: Query Storage Resource operation input parameters**

| Parameter        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| queryQuotaFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Query filter based on e.g. name, identifier, meta-data information or status information, expressing the type of information to be retrieved.<br>It can also be used to specify one or more quotas to be queried by providing their identifiers. |

### 7.9.3.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.3.2.3-1.

**Table 7.9.3.2.3-1: Query Storage Resource operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content             | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | VirtualStorageQuota | Contains information about the quota resource(s) matching the filter. The cardinality can be 0 if no matching quota exists.<br>See clause 8.8.4.2. |

### 7.9.3.2.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal management objects for the virtualised storage resource quotas. The result of the query shall indicate with a standard success/error result if the query has been processed correctly. For a particular query, information about the storage resource quotas that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.9.4 Virtualised Resources Quota Change Notification Interface

### 7.9.4.1 Description

This interface allows an authorized consumer functional block to request subscription to changes on quota of virtualised resources, and to provide such notification to the subscribed consumer. As such, it provides the notification part of the Virtualised Resources Quota Management interfaces.

### 7.9.4.2 Subscribe operation

#### 7.9.4.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to subscribe with a filter for the notifications related to quota on virtualised resources sent by the VIM. Specification of filtering mechanism is part of the protocol design.

Table 7.9.4.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.9.4.2.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.9.4.2.2 Input parameters

The parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.4.2.2-1.

**Table 7.9.4.2.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| inputFilter | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting the virtualised resource(s) and the related change notifications to subscribe to. This filter can contain information about specific attributes of the resource or of the quota. |

### 7.9.4.2.3 Output parameters

The parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.9.4.2.3-1.

**Table 7.9.4.2.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

### 7.9.4.2.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the VNFM is registered to receive notifications related to changes on quota of virtualised storage resources sent by the VIM. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the VNFM.

## 7.9.4.3 Notify operation

### 7.9.4.3.1 Description

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the VIM that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM).

In order to receive notifications, the VNFM shall have a subscription.

Table 7.9.4.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VIM and the VNFM.

**Table 7.9.4.3.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notification is sent by this operation:

- VirtualisedResourceQuotaChangeNotification. See clause 8.8.5.

## 7.10 Policy Management Interface

### 7.10.1 Description

This interface allows the VNFM to invoke policy management operations towards the VIM.

The following policy management operations are defined for this interface:

- Transfer Policy.
- Delete Policy.
- Query Policy.
- Activate Policy.

- Deactivate Policy.

This interface allows the VNFM to manage subscriptions to notifications sent by the VIM which inform about changes of a policy and about any detected policy conflicts. It allows the VIM to provide such notifications to the subscriber (e.g. VNFM).

## 7.10.2 Transfer Policy operation

### 7.10.2.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to transfer an NFV-MANO policy to the VIM. Table 7.10.2.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.2.1-1: Transfer Policy operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| TransferPolicyRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| TransferPolicyResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.2.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.2.2-1.

**Table 7.10.2.2-1: Transfer Policy operation input parameters**

| Parameter  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|--|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| designer   | M         | 1           | String  | Human readable name of designer of the policy.  |
| name   | M         | 1           | String  | Human readable name of the policy.  |
| version  | M         | 1           | Version | Version of the policy. Its value shall be the same as the one within the policy being transferred, i.e. the "policyVersion" attribute in the "Policy" information element specified in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 048 [3]. |
| policy   | M         | 1           | Policy  | Specifies the policy. See notes 1 and 2. "Policy" is specified in clause 5.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 048 [3].  |
| NOTE 1: An identifier for uniquely identifying the policy shall be included in the policy.   |           |             |         |   |
| NOTE 2: The VNFM may use this operation to update an existing policy with a new version. Different policy versions share the same internal identifier of the policy but having different PolicyInfo instances. The design of different policy versions and their business logic is out of the scope of the present document. |           |             |         |   |

### 7.10.2.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.2.3-1.

**Table 7.10.2.3-1: Transfer Policy operation output parameters**

| Parameter    | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| policyInfoId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the policy information created by the VIM. |

### 7.10.2.4 Operation results

In case of success, the NFV-MANO policy is transferred to the VIM and corresponding policy information is created by the VIM. In case of failure, appropriate error information is returned.

## 7.10.3 Delete Policy operation

### 7.10.3.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to delete one or multiple NFV-MANO policy(ies) from the VIM. Table 7.10.3.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.3.1-1: Delete Policy operation**

| Message              | Requirement | Direction  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------|
| DeletePolicyRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| DeletePolicyResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.3.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.3.2-1.

**Table 7.10.3.2-1: Delete Policy operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                              | Description                                      |
|---|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| policyInfoId  | M         | 1..N        | Identifier (Reference to PolicyInfo) | References the policy information to be deleted. |
| NOTE: It is up to the protocol design stage to determine whether this operation will be modelled as a "bulk" operation that allows to delete multiple policies in one request, or as a series of requests that delete one policy at a time. |           |             |                                      |  |

### 7.10.3.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.3.3-1.

**Table 7.10.3.3-1: Delete Policy operation output parameters**

| Parameter           | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                              | Description   |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| deletedPolicyInfoId | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to PolicyInfo) | References the deleted NFV-MANO policy information. |

### 7.10.3.4 Operation results

In case of success, the NFV-MANO policy(ies) are deleted from the VIM, and a success indicator is returned to the VNFM. In case of failure, appropriate error information is returned.

## 7.10.4 Query Policy operation

### 7.10.4.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to query the information from the VIM on one or multiple NFV-MANO policy(ies). Table 7.10.4.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.4.1-1: Query Policy operation**

| Message             | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------------------|-------------|------------|
| QueryPolicyRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QueryPolicyResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.4.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.4.2-1.

**Table 7.10.4.2-1: Query Policy operation input parameters**

| Parameter         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| filter            | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filter defining the NFV-MANO policy information on which the query applies, based on attributes of NFV-MANO policy information.<br>It can also be used to specify one or more NFV-MANO policy(ies) information to be queried by providing their identifiers. |
| attributeSelector | M         | 0..N        | String  | Provides a list of attribute names of NFV-MANO policy information. If present, only these attributes are returned for the policy information matching the filter.<br>If absent, the complete policy information is returned.                                 |

### 7.10.4.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.4.3-1.

**Table 7.10.4.3-1: Query Policy operation output parameters**

| Parameter               | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| queryNsPolicyInfoResult | M         | 0..N        | PolicyInfo | NFV-MANO policy information matching the input filter.<br>If attributeSelector is present, only the attributes listed in attributeSelector are returned for the selected policy information.<br>See note. |

NOTE: The lower cardinality is 0 since there may be no matches to the provided filter.

### 7.10.4.4 Operation results

After success operation, the VIM has queried the internal NFV-MANO policy information. The result of the operation indicates whether it has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular query, policy information that is matching the filter shall be returned.

## 7.10.5 Activate Policy operation

### 7.10.5.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to activate one or multiple NFV-MANO policy(ies) in the VIM. Table 7.10.5.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.5.1-1: Activate Policy operation**

| Message                | Requirement | Direction  |
|------------------------|-------------|------------|
| ActivatePolicyRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| ActivatePolicyResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.5.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.5.2-1.

**Table 7.10.5.2-1: Activate Policy operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                              | Description  |
|---|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| policyInfoId  | M         | 1..N        | Identifier (Reference to PolicyInfo) | References the policy information to be activated. See note. |
| NOTE: It is up to the protocol design stage to determine whether this operation will be modelled as a "bulk" operation that allows to activate multiple policies in one request, or as a series of requests that activate one policy at a time. |           |             |                                      |  |

### 7.10.5.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.5.3-1.

**Table 7.10.5.3-1: Activate Policy operation output parameters**

| Parameter             | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                              | Description                                    |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| activatedPolicyInfoId | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to PolicyInfo) | References the activated NFV-MANO policy(ies). |

### 7.10.5.4 Operation results

In case of success, the NFV-MANO policy(ies) are activated in the VIM, and a success indicator is returned to the VNFM. In case of failure, appropriate error information is returned.

## 7.10.6 Deactivate Policy operation

### 7.10.6.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to deactivate one or multiple NFV-MANO policy(ies) in the VIM. Table 7.10.6.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.6.1-1: Deactivate Policy operation**

| Message                  | Requirement | Direction  |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------|
| DeactivatePolicyRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| DeactivatePolicyResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.6.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.6.2-1.

**Table 7.10.6.2-1: Deactivate Policy operation input parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                              | Description  |
|---|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| policyInfoId  | M         | 1..N        | Identifier (Reference to PolicyInfo) | References the policy to be deactivated. See note. |
| NOTE: It is up to the protocol design stage to determine whether this operation will be modelled as a "bulk" operation that allows to deactivate multiple policies in one request, or as a series of requests that deactivate one policy at a time. |           |             |                                      |  |

### 7.10.6.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.6.3-1.

**Table 7.10.6.3-1: Deactivate Policy operation output parameters**

| Parameter               | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                              | Description                                      |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| deactivatedPolicyInfoId | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to PolicyInfo) | References the deactivated NFV-MANO policy(ies). |

#### 7.10.6.4 Operation results

In case of success, the NFV-MANO policy(ies) are deactivated in the VIM, and a success indicator is returned to the VNFM. In case of failure, appropriate error information is returned.

### 7.10.7 Subscribe operation

#### 7.10.7.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to subscribe with a filter for the notifications sent by the VIM which are related to changes of a policy and any detected policy conflicts. Changes of a policy are related to operations of transferring policy, deleting policy, activating policy and deactivating policy.

Table 7.10.7.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.7.1-1: Subscribe operation**

| Message           | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| SubscribeRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| SubscribeResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

#### 7.10.7.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.7.2-1.

**Table 7.10.7.2-1: Subscribe operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Input filter for selecting the notifications. This filter can contain information about specific types of notifications to subscribe to, or attributes of the PolicyInfo. Details are part of the protocol design. |

#### 7.10.7.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.7.3-1.

**Table 7.10.7.3-1: Subscribe operation output parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                              |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription realized. |

#### 7.10.7.4 Operation results

After successful subscription, the consumer (VNFM) is registered to receive notifications about events related to changes of a policy and any detected policy conflicts.

The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular subscription, only notifications matching the filter will be delivered to the consumer.

## 7.10.8 Notify operation

### 7.10.8.1 Description

This operation notifies a subscriber about events related to notifications about changes of a policy and any detected policy conflicts.

This operation distributes notifications to subscribers. It is a one-way operation issued by the producer (VIM) that cannot be invoked as an operation by the consumer (VNFM). In order to receive notifications, the consumer (VNFM) has to perform an explicit Subscribe operation beforehand.

Table 7.10.8.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.8.1-1: Notify operation**

| Message | Requirement | Direction  |
|---------|-------------|------------|
| Notify  | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

The following notifications can be notified/sent by this operation:

- PolicyChangeNotification. See clause 8.9.3.
- PolicyConflictNotification. See clause 8.9.4.

## 7.10.9 Terminate Subscription operation

### 7.10.9.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to terminate a particular subscription.

Table 7.10.9.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.9.1-1: Terminate Subscription operation**

| Message                       | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| TerminateSubscriptionRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| TerminateSubscriptionResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.9.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.9.2-1.

**Table 7.10.9.2-1: Terminate Subscription operation input parameters**

| Parameter      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                                      |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| subscriptionId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the subscription to be terminated. |

### 7.10.9.3 Output parameters

None.

### 7.10.9.4 Operation results

After successful termination of a subscription, the identified subscription does not exist anymore, and the VNFM will not receive notifications related that subscription any longer. The result of the operation shall indicate if the subscription termination has been successful or not with a standard success/error result.

## 7.10.10 Query Subscription Info operation

### 7.10.10.1 Description

This operation enables the VNFM to query information about subscriptions.

Table 7.10.10.1-1 lists the information flow exchanged between the VNFM and the VIM.

**Table 7.10.10.1-1: Query Subscription Info operation**

| Message                       | Requirement | Direction  |
|-------------------------------|-------------|------------|
| QuerySubscriptionInfoRequest  | Mandatory   | VNFM → VIM |
| QuerySubscriptionInfoResponse | Mandatory   | VIM → VNFM |

### 7.10.10.2 Input parameters

The input parameters sent when invoking the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.10.2-1.

**Table 7.10.10.2-1: Query Subscription Info operation input parameters**

| Parameter | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| Filter    | M         | 1           | Filter  | Filtering criteria to select one or a set of subscriptions. Details are part of the protocol design. |

### 7.10.10.3 Output parameters

The output parameters returned by the operation shall follow the indications provided in table 7.10.10.3-1.

**Table 7.10.10.3-1: Query Subscription Info operation output parameters**

| Parameter   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| queryResult | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Information about the subscription(s) matching the query. Details are part of the protocol design stage. |

### 7.10.10.4 Operation results

After successful operation, the VIM has queried the internal subscription objects. The result of the operation indicates if it has been successful or not with a standard success/error result. For a particular query, information about the subscriptions to notifications related to changes of a policy and any detected policy conflicts that the VNFM has access to and that are matching the filter shall be returned.

---

## 8 Information element exchanged

### 8.1 Introduction

This clause defines, or references, definitions of information elements used in the interfaces defined in the present document.

## 8.2 Information elements related to software images

### 8.2.1 Introduction

This clause specifies information elements related to software images.

### 8.2.2 SoftwareImageInformation information element

#### 8.2.2.1 Description

This information element represents Software Image Information.

#### 8.2.2.2 Attributes

The SoftwareImageInformation information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.2.2.2-1.

**Table 8.2.2.2-1: Attributes of the SoftwareImageInformation information element**

| Attribute       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| softwareImageId | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of this software image.   |
| name            | M         | 1           | Not specified | Name of this software image.   |
| provider        | M         | 1           | Not specified | Provider of this software image.   |
| version         | M         | 1           | Not specified | Version of the software image file.  |
| checksum        | M         | 1           | Not specified | Checksum of the software image file.   |
| containerFormat | M         | 1           | Not specified | Container format indicates whether the software image is in a file format that also contains metadata about the actual software. |
| diskFormat      | M         | 1           | Not specified | Disk format of a software image is the format of the underlying disk image.  |
| createdAt       | M         | 1           | Not specified | Time this software image was created.  |
| updatedAt       | M         | 1           | Not specified | Time this software image was last updated.   |
| minDisk         | M         | 1           | Not specified | Minimal disk size for this software image.   |
| minRam          | M         | 1           | Not specified | Minimal RAM size for this software image.  |
| size            | M         | 1           | Not specified | Size of this software image.   |
| status          | M         | 1           | Not specified | Status of this software image.   |
| userMetadata    | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair  | User-defined metadata.   |

## 8.3 Information elements and notifications related to Consumable Virtualised Resources Information

### 8.3.1 Introduction

The clauses below define information elements and notifications related to Consumable Virtualised Resources Information.

### 8.3.2 InformationChangeNotification

#### 8.3.2.1 Description

This notification informs the receiver that information related to consumable virtualised resources is changed.

#### 8.3.2.2 Trigger conditions

- Addition of consumable virtualised resources.
- Removal of consumable virtualised resources.

- Update of consumable virtualised resources.

### 8.3.2.3 Attributes

The InformationChangeNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.3.2.3-1.

**Table 8.3.2.3-1: Attributes of the InformationChangeNotification notification**

| Attribute           | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content  | Description   |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| changeId            | M         | 1           | Identifier   | Unique identifier of the change on the consumable virtualised resource type.  |
| resourceTypeId      | M         | 1           | Identifier (Reference to VirtualComputeResourceInformation, VirtualStorageResourceInformation, or VirtualNetworkResourceInformation) | References the consumable virtualised resource type.  |
| vimId               | M         | 1           | Identifier   | Identifier of the VIM reporting the change.   |
| changeType          | M         | 1           | Enum   | Categorizes the type of change.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ADDITION</li> <li>• REMOVAL</li> <li>• UPDATE</li> </ul>            |
| changedResourceData | M         | 0..1        | Not specified  | Details of the changes of consumable virtualised resource information. Its content can differ based on the values of the resourceTypeId and changeType. |

## 8.3.3 Information elements related to Virtual Compute Resource Information

### 8.3.3.1 Introduction

The information elements below define the characteristics of consumable virtualised compute resources.

### 8.3.3.2 VirtualComputeResourceInformation information element

#### 8.3.3.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualComputeResourceInformation information element.

#### 8.3.3.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualComputeResourceInformation information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.3.3.2.2-1.

**Table 8.3.3.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualComputeResourceInformation information element**

| Attribute             | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description  |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|--|
| computeResourceTypeId | M         | 1           | Identifier                       | Identifier of the consumable virtualised compute resource type.                                      |
| virtualMemory         | M         | 0..1        | VirtualMemoryResourceInformation | Defines the virtual memory characteristics of the consumable virtualised compute resource. See note. |
| virtualCpu            | M         | 0..1        | VirtualCpuResourceInformation    | Defines the virtual CPU(s) characteristics of the consumable virtualised compute resource. See note. |

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|---|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| accelerationCapability  | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Acceleration capabilities (e.g. crypto, GPU) for the consumable virtualised compute resource from the set of capabilities offered by the compute node acceleration resources. The cardinality can be 0, if no particular acceleration capability is provided. See also note. |
| NOTE: Cardinality can be "0" if the attribute refers to a characteristic that is not being reported on a specific query or notification, e.g. through an InformationChangeNotification. |           |             |               |  |

### 8.3.3.3 VirtualCpuResourceInformation information element

#### 8.3.3.3.1 Description

The VirtualCpuResourceInformation defines the virtual CPU(s) characteristics of consumable virtualised compute resource.

#### 8.3.3.3.2 Attributes

The VirtualCpuResourceInformation information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.3.3.3.2-1.

**Table 8.3.3.3.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualCpuResourceInformation information element**

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| cpuArchitecture                  | M         | 1           | String        | CPU architecture type. Examples are x86, ARM.  |
| numVirtualCpu                    | M         | 0..1        | Number        | Number of virtual CPUs. Cardinality "1" covers the case where a specific configuration for the consumable resource is advertised.                                  |
| cpuClock                         | M         | 1           | Number        | Minimum CPU clock rate (e.g. in MHz) available for the virtualised CPU resources.  |
| virtualCpuOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | CPU core oversubscription policy, e.g. the relation of virtual CPU cores to physical CPU cores/threads. The cardinality can be 0 if no concrete policy is defined. |
| virtualCpuPinningSupported       | M         | 1           | Boolean       | Defines whether CPU pinning capability is available on the consumable virtualised compute resource.  |

### 8.3.3.4 VirtualMemoryResourceInformation information element

#### 8.3.3.4.1 Description

The VirtualMemoryResourceInformation defines the virtual memory characteristics of consumable virtualised compute resource.

#### 8.3.3.4.2 Attributes

The VirtualMemoryResourceInformation information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.3.3.4.2-1.

**Table 8.3.3.4.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualMemoryResourceInformation information element**

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description   |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| virtualMemSize                   | M         | 0..1        | Number        | Amount of virtual memory (e.g. in MB). Cardinality "1" covers the case where a specific configuration for the consumable resource is advertised.              |
| virtualMemOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Memory core oversubscription policy in terms of virtual memory to physical memory on the platform. The cardinality can be 0 if no concrete policy is defined. |
| numaSupported                    | M         | 1           | Boolean       | Specifies if the memory allocation can be cognisant of the relevant process/core allocation.  |

## 8.3.4 VirtualStorageResourceInformation information element

### 8.3.4.1 Description

This information element defines the characteristics of consumable virtual storage resources.

### 8.3.4.2 Attributes

The VirtualStorageResourceInformation information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.3.4.2-1.

**Table 8.3.4.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualStorageResourceInformation information element**

| Attribute             | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| storageResourceTypeId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the consumable virtualised storage resource type.  |
| typeOfStorage         | M         | 1           | String     | Type of virtualised storage resource (e.g. volume, object).  |
| sizeOfStorage         | M         | 0..1        | Number     | Size of virtualised storage resource (e.g. size of volume, in GB). Cardinality "1" covers the case where a specific configuration for the consumable resource is advertised. |
| rdmaSupported         | O         | 0..1        | Boolean    | Indicates if the storage supports RDMA.  |

## 8.3.5 VirtualNetworkResourceInformation information element

### 8.3.5.1 Description

This information element defines the characteristics of consumable virtual network resources.

### 8.3.5.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkResourceInformation information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.3.5.2-1.

**Table 8.3.5.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkResourceInformation information element**

| Attribute             | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| networkResourceTypeId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the network resource type.  |
| bandwidth             | M         | 1           | Number     | Minimum network bandwidth (in Mbps).  |
| networkType           | M         | 0..1        | String     | The type of network that maps to the virtualised network. Examples are: "local", "vlan", "vxlan", "gre", etc. |
| networkQoS            | M         | 0..N        | NetworkQoS | Provides information about Quality of Service attributes that the network shall support. See clause 8.4.5.3.  |

## 8.4 Information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources

### 8.4.1 Introduction

The Virtualised Resources information elements contain the details of the content carried by the various input and output information elements that are exchanged between the VIM and VNFM as part of the relevant interfaces defined for the virtualised compute, network and storage resources.

The clauses below define information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources.

### 8.4.2 Information elements related to Virtual Compute Flavour

#### 8.4.2.1 Introduction

The clauses below define information elements related to Virtual Compute Flavour.

#### 8.4.2.2 VirtualComputeFlavour information element

##### 8.4.2.2.1 Description

The VirtualComputeFlavour information element encapsulates information for compute flavours. A compute flavour includes information about number of virtual CPUs, size of virtual memory, size of virtual storage, and virtual network interfaces. The VirtualNetworkInterface information element encapsulates information of a virtual network interface for a compute resource.

##### 8.4.2.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualComputeFlavour information element encapsulates information for compute flavours. A compute flavour includes information about number of virtual CPUs, size of virtual memory, size of virtual storage, and virtual network interfaces.

The VirtualComputeFlavour information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.2.2.2-1.

**Table 8.4.2.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualComputeFlavour information element**

| Attribute              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content           | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|-------------------|--|
| flavourId              | M         | 0..1        | Identifier        | Identifier given to the compute flavour. When the VirtualComputeFlavour is used as input in operations to request the creation of a compute flavour, the cardinality can be "0" if VIM assigns the identifier in order to avoid potential identifier assignment conflicts. The flavourId shall be present otherwise. |
| isPublic               | M         | 0..1        | Boolean           | Scope of flavour accessibility. It indicates if the compute flavour is accessible and shared across clients. Default value is True, which means public. False means private.   |
| accelerationCapability | M         | 0..N        | Not specified     | Selected acceleration capabilities (e.g. crypto, GPU) from the set of capabilities offered by the compute node acceleration resources. The cardinality can be 0, if no particular acceleration capability is requested.  |
| virtualMemory          | M         | 1           | VirtualMemoryData | Virtual memory of the virtualised compute. See clause 8.4.3.5.   |
| virtualCpu             | M         | 1           | VirtualCpuData    | Virtual CPU(s) of the virtualised compute. See clause 8.4.3.3.   |

| Attribute               | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                     | Description  |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------------|--|
| storageAttributes       | M         | 0..N        | VirtualStorageData          | Contains information about the size of virtualised storage resource (e.g. size of volume, in GB), the type of storage (e.g. volume, object), and support for RDMA. See clause 8.4.6.3. |
| virtualNetworkInterface | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkInterfaceData | Virtual network interfaces of the virtualised compute. See clause 8.4.2.6.   |

### 8.4.2.3 VirtualCpuData information element

#### 8.4.2.3.1 Description

Information describing a virtual CPU.

#### 8.4.2.3.2 Attributes

The VirtualCpuData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.2.3.2-1.

**Table 8.4.2.3.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualCpuData information element**

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content               | Description  |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|--|
| cpuArchitecture                  | M         | 0..1        | String                | CPU architecture type. Examples are x86, ARM. The cardinality can be 0 during the allocation request, if no particular CPU architecture type is requested.   |
| numVirtualCpu                    | M         | 1           | Integer               | Number of virtual CPUs.  |
| cpuClock                         | M         | 0..1        | Number                | Minimum CPU clock rate (e.g. in MHz) available for the virtualised CPU resources. The cardinality can be 0 during the allocation request, if no particular value is requested.                       |
| virtualCpuOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified         | CPU core oversubscription policy, e.g. the relation of virtual CPU cores to physical CPU cores/threads. The cardinality can be 0 during the allocation request, if no particular value is requested. |
| virtualCpuPinning                | M         | 0..1        | VirtualCpuPinningData | Virtual CPU pinning configuration for the virtualised compute resource. See clause 8.4.3.4.  |
| powerStateReqs                   | M         | 0..1        | Not specified         | Virtual CPU power (state) requirements for the virtualised compute resource.   |

### 8.4.2.4 VirtualCpuPinningData information element format

#### 8.4.2.4.1 Description

Information describing CPU pinning policy and rules for virtual CPU to physical CPU mapping of the virtualised compute resource.

#### 8.4.2.4.2 Attributes

The VirtualCpuPinningData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.2.4.2-1.

**Table 8.4.2.4.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualCpuPinningData information element**

| Attribute               | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| virtualCpuPinningPolicy | M         | 1           | Enum          | Indicates the policy for CPU pinning.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• STATIC</li> <li>• DYNAMIC</li> </ul> In case of "STATIC" the virtual CPU cores are requested to be allocated to logical CPU cores according to the rules defined in virtualCpuPinningRules. In case of "DYNAMIC" the allocation of virtual CPU cores to logical CPU cores is decided by the VIM (e.g. SMT (Simultaneous Multi-Threading) requirements). |
| virtualCpuPinningRules  | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | List of rules that should be considered during the allocation of the virtual CPUs to logical CPUs in case of "static" virtualCpuPinningPolicy.   |

## 8.4.2.5 VirtualMemoryData information element format

### 8.4.2.5.1 Description

Information describing virtual memory.

### 8.4.2.5.2 Attributes

The VirtualMemoryData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.2.5.2-1.

**Table 8.4.2.5.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualMemoryData information element**

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description   |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| virtualMemSize                   | M         | 1           | Number        | Amount of virtual Memory (e.g. in MB).  |
| virtualMemOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Memory core oversubscription policy in terms of virtual memory to physical memory on the platform. The cardinality can be 0 during the allocation request, if no particular value is requested. |
| numaEnabled                      | M         | 0..1        | Boolean       | Specifies the memory allocation to be cognisant of the relevant process/core allocation. The cardinality can be 0 during the allocation request, if no particular value is requested.           |

## 8.4.2.6 VirtualNetworkInterfaceData information element

### 8.4.2.6.1 Description

A virtual network interface is a communication endpoint under a compute resource.

### 8.4.2.6.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkInterfaceData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.2.6.2-1.

**Table 8.4.2.6.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkInterfaceData information element**

| Attribute | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| networkId | M         | 0..1        | Identifier | In the case when the virtual network interface is attached to the network, it identifies such a network. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without being attached to any specific network. |

| Attribute              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| networkPortId          | M         | 0..1        | Identifier    | If the virtual network interface is attached to a specific network port, it identifies such a network port. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without any specific network port attachment. |
| typeVirtualNic         | M         | 1           | Not specified | Type of network interface. The type allows for defining how such interface is to be realized, e.g. normal virtual NIC, with direct PCI pass-through, SR-IOV, etc.  |
| typeConfiguration      | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Extra configuration that the virtual network interface supports based on the type of virtual network interface.  |
| bandwidth              | M         | 0..1        | Number        | Bandwidth of the virtual network interface (in Mbps).  |
| accelerationCapability | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Specifies if the virtual network interface requires certain acceleration capabilities (e.g. RDMA, packet dispatch, TCP Chimney). The cardinality can be 0, if no particular acceleration capability is requested.                  |
| metadata               | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair  | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.  |

## 8.4.3 Information elements related to Virtual Compute

### 8.4.3.1 Introduction

The information elements in this group encapsulate data of an instantiated virtualised compute resource.

### 8.4.3.2 VirtualCompute information element

#### 8.4.3.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualCompute information element.

#### 8.4.3.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualCompute information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.3.2.2-1.

**Table 8.4.3.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualCompute information element**

| Attribute              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| computeId              | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of the virtualised compute resource.  |
| computeName            | M         | 0..1        | String        | Name of the virtualised compute resource.  |
| flavourId              | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of the given compute flavour used to instantiate this virtual compute.  |
| accelerationCapability | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Selected acceleration capabilities (e.g. crypto, GPU) from the set of capabilities offered by the compute node acceleration resources. The cardinality can be 0, if no particular acceleration capability is provided. |
| virtualCpu             | M         | 1           | VirtualCpu    | Virtual CPU(s) of the virtualised compute. See clause 8.4.3.3.   |
| virtualMemory          | M         | 1           | VirtualMemory | Virtual memory of the compute. See clause 8.4.3.5.   |

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                 | Description   |
|---|-----------|-------------|-------------------------|---|
| virtualNetworkInterface   | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkInterface | Provides information of the instantiated virtual network interfaces of the compute resource. See clause 8.4.3.6.  |
| virtualDisks  | M         | 1..N        | VirtualStorage          | Provides information of the virtualised storage resources (volumes, ephemeral) that are attached to the compute resource. See clause 8.4.7.2.   |
| vclmageId   | M         | 0..1        | Identifier              | Identifier of the virtualisation container software image (e.g. virtual machine image). Cardinality can be 0 if an "empty" virtualisation container is allocated.                               |
| zoneId  | M         | 0..1        | Identifier              | If present, it identifies the resource zone where the virtual compute resources have been allocated.  |
| hostId  | M         | 1           | Identifier              | Identifier of the host the virtualised compute resource is allocated on.  |
| operationalState  | M         | 1           | Enum                    | Operational state of the compute resource. See note.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ENABLED</li> <li>DISABLED</li> </ul>  |
| runningState  | M         | 1           | Enum                    | Running state of the compute resource. See note.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>STARTED</li> <li>STOPPED</li> <li>PAUSED</li> <li>SUSPENDED</li> <li>REBOOTING</li> </ul> |
| metadata  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair            | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.   |
| NOTE: Values of the operationalState attribute are rather administrative states, while the runningState attribute provides operational state information. |           |             |                         |   |

### 8.4.3.3 VirtualCpu information element format

#### 8.4.3.3.1 Description

The virtual CPU(s) of the virtualised compute.

#### 8.4.3.3.2 Attributes

The VirtualCpu information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.3.3.2-1.

**Table 8.4.3.3.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualCpu information element**

| Attribute       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| cpuArchitecture | M         | 1           | String  | CPU architecture type. Examples are x86, ARM.                                     |
| numVirtualCpu   | M         | 1           | Integer | Number of virtual CPUs.   |
| cpuClock        | M         | 1           | Number  | Minimum CPU clock rate (e.g. in MHz) available for the virtualised CPU resources. |

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content           | Description   |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-------------------|---|
| virtualCpuOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified     | CPU core oversubscription policy, e.g. the relation of virtual CPU cores to physical CPU cores/threads. The cardinality can be 0 if no policy has been defined during the allocation request. |
| virtualCpuPinning                | M         | 0..1        | VirtualCpuPinning | Virtual CPU pinning configuration for the virtualised compute resource. See clause 8.4.3.4.   |
| powerState                       | M         | 0..1        | Not specified     | Virtual CPU power state information of the virtualised compute resource.  |

#### 8.4.3.4 VirtualCpuPinning information element format

##### 8.4.3.4.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualCpuPinning information element.

##### 8.4.3.4.2 Attributes

The VirtualCpuPinning information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.3.4.2-1.

**Table 8.4.3.4.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualCpuPinning information element**

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| cpuPinningPolicy | M         | 1           | Enum          | Indicates the policy for CPU pinning.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• STATIC</li> <li>• DYNAMIC</li> </ul> In case of "STATIC" the virtual CPU cores have been allocated to physical CPU cores according to the rules defined in cpuPinningRules. In case of "DYNAMIC" the allocation of virtual CPU cores to physical CPU cores is decided by the VIM. |
| cpuPinningRules  | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | List of rules that should be considered during the allocation of the virtual CPU-s to physical CPU-s in case of "static" cpuPinningPolicy.   |
| cpuMap           | M         | 1           | Not specified | Describes the association of virtual CPU cores to physical CPU cores.  |

#### 8.4.3.5 VirtualMemory information element format

##### 8.4.3.5.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualMemory information element.

##### 8.4.3.5.2 Attributes

The VirtualMemory information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.3.5.2-1.

**Table 8.4.3.5.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualMemory information element**

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| virtualMemSize                   | M         | 1           | Number        | Amount of virtual Memory (e.g. in MB).   |
| virtualMemOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Memory core oversubscription policy in terms of virtual memory to physical memory on the platform. The cardinality can be 0 if no policy has been defined during the allocation request. |
| numaEnabled                      | M         | 1           | Boolean       | Specifies the memory allocation to be cognisant of the relevant process/core allocation.   |

### 8.4.3.6 VirtualNetworkInterface information element

#### 8.4.3.6.1 Description

A virtual network interface resource is a communication endpoint under an instantiated compute resource.

#### 8.4.3.6.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkInterface information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.3.6.2-1.

**Table 8.4.3.6.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkInterface information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                      | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| resourceId        | M         | 1           | Identifier                                   | Identifier of the virtual network interface.  |
| ownerId           | M         | 1           | Identifier                                   | Identifier of the owner of the network interface (e.g. a virtualised compute resource).   |
| networkId         | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetwork)     | In the case when the virtual network interface is attached to the network, it references such a network. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without being attached to any specific network.   |
| networkPortId     | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetworkPort) | If the virtual network interface is attached to a specific network port, it references such a network port. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without any specific network port attachment.  |
| ipAddress         | M         | 0..N        | IpAddress                                    | The virtual network interface can be configured with specific IP address(es) associated to the network to be attached to. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without being attached to any specific network, or when an IP address can be automatically configured, e.g. by DHCP. |
| typeVirtualNic    | M         | 1           | Not specified                                | Type of network interface. The type allows for defining how such interface is to be realized, e.g. normal virtual NIC, with direct PCI pass-through, etc.   |
| typeConfiguration | M         | 0..N        | Not specified                                | Extra configuration that the virtual network interface supports based on the type of virtual network interface, including support for SR-IOV with configuration of Virtual Functions (VF).  |
| macAddress        | M         | 1           | MacAddress                                   | MAC address of the virtual network interface.   |
| bandwidth         | M         | 1           | Number                                       | Bandwidth of the virtual network interface (in Mbps).   |

| Attribute              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description   |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| accelerationCapability | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Describes the acceleration capabilities utilized by the virtual network interface. The cardinality can be 0, if no acceleration capability is utilized. |
| operationalState       | M         | 1           | Enum          | Operational state of the virtual network interface.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ENABLED</li> <li>DISABLED</li> </ul>              |
| metadata               | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair  | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.                             |

### 8.4.3.7 VirtualInterfaceData information element

#### 8.4.3.7.1 Description

A virtual interface represents the data of a virtual network interface specific to a Virtual Compute Resource instance.

#### 8.4.3.7.2 Attributes

The VirtualInterfaceData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.3.7.2-1.

**Table 8.4.3.7.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualInterfaceData information element**

| Attribute  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                     | Description   |
|------------|-----------|-------------|---|---|
| networkId  | M         | 0..1        | Identifier<br>(Reference to VirtualNetwork) | In the case when the virtual network interface is attached to the network, it references such a network. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without being attached to any specific network.   |
| ipAddress  | M         | 0..N        | IpAddress                                   | The virtual network interface can be configured with specific IP address(es) associated to the network to be attached to. The cardinality can be 0 in the case that a network interface is created without being attached to any specific network, or when an IP address can be automatically configured, e.g. by DHCP. |
| macAddress | M         | 0..1        | MacAddress                                  | MAC address desired for the virtual network interface. The cardinality can be 0 to allow for network interface without specific MAC address configuration.  |

## 8.4.4 Information elements related to Virtual Network Data

### 8.4.4.1 Introduction

The information elements in this group encapsulate information to allocate or update virtualised network resources.

### 8.4.4.2 VirtualNetworkData information element format

#### 8.4.4.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualNetworkData information element.

#### 8.4.4.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.2.2-1.

Table 8.4.4.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkData information element

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                  | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| bandwidth         | M         | 1           | Number                                   | Minimum network bandwidth (in Mbps).  |
| networkType       | M         | 0..1        | String                                   | Type of network that maps to the virtualised network. This list is extensible. Examples are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "local";</li> <li>• "vlan";</li> <li>• "vxlan";</li> <li>• "gre";</li> <li>• "I3-vpn";</li> <li>• "ipsec";</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul> Cardinality can be "0" to cover the case where this attribute is not required to create the virtualised network.                          |
| providerNetwork   | M         | 0..1        | String                                   | Name of the infrastructure provider network used to realize the virtual network.<br>Cardinality can be "0" to cover the case where virtual network is not based on infrastructure provider network.   |
| segmentationId    | M         | 0..1        | Integer                                  | The segmentation identifier of the network that maps to the virtualised network, for which, the segmentation model is defined by the networkType attribute. For instance, for a "vlan" networkType, it corresponds to the vlan identifier; and for a "gre" networkType, it corresponds to a gre key.<br>Cardinality can be "0" to cover the case where networkType is flat network without any specific segmentation. |
| networkQoS        | M         | 0..N        | NetworkQoS                               | Provides information about Quality of Service attributes that the network shall support. See clause 8.4.4.3.<br>Cardinality can be "0" for networks without any specified QoS requirements.   |
| isShared          | M         | 0..1        | Boolean                                  | Specifies whether the virtualised network is shared among consumers.  |
| sharingCriteria   | M         | 0..1        | Not specified                            | Only present for shared networks. Indicate the sharing criteria/constraint for this network. These criteria might be a list of authorized consumers.  |
| layer3Attributes  | M         | 0..N        | NetworkSubnetData                        | Attribute list allows setting up a network providing defined layer 3 connectivity. See clause 8.4.4.4 for further information on the attributes required for layer 3 connectivity.  |
| metadata          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                             | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.   |
| connectedNetworks | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetwork) | Specifies the virtual network resources to which the newly created virtual network is intended to be explicitly interconnected.   |

### 8.4.4.3 NetworkQoS information element format

#### 8.4.4.3.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the NetworkQoS information element. This type gives QoS options to be supported on the virtualised network, e.g. latency, jitter, etc.

#### 8.4.4.3.2 Attributes

The NetworkQoS information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.3.2-1.

**Table 8.4.4.3.2-1: Attributes of the NetworkQoS information element**

| Attribute | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description                      |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| qosName   | M         | 1           | String  | Name given to the QoS parameter. |
| qosValue  | M         | 1           | Value   | Value of the QoS parameter.      |

#### 8.4.4.4 NetworkSubnetData information element

##### 8.4.4.4.1 Description

The NetworkSubnetData information element encapsulates information to allocate or update virtualised sub-networks.

##### 8.4.4.4.2 Attributes

The NetworkSubnetData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.4.2-1.

**Table 8.4.4.4.2-1: Attributes of the NetworkSubnetData information element**

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|---|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| networkId   | M         | 0..1        | Identifier    | Identifier of the virtualised network that the virtualised sub-network is attached to. The cardinality can be 0 to cover the case where this type is used to describe the L3 attributes of a network rather than a subnetwork or when NetworkSubnetData is part of Update Virtualised Network Resource (see clause 7.4.1.4.2). See note. |
| ipVersion   | M         | 0..1        | Enum          | IP version of the network/subnetwork.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPV4</li> <li>• IPV6</li> </ul> Cardinality can be 0 when NetworkSubnetData is part of Update Virtualised Network Resource (see clause 7.4.1.4.2). See note.  |
| gatewayIp   | M         | 0..1        | IpAddress     | Specifies the IP address of the network/subnetwork gateway when the gateway is selected by the requestor.  |
| cidr  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | CIDR of the network/subnetwork, i.e. network address and subnet mask.<br>Cardinality can be 0 when NetworkSubnetData is part of Update Virtualised Network Resource (see clause 7.4.1.4.2). See note.  |
| isDhcpEnabled   | M         | 0..1        | Boolean       | True when DHCP is to be enabled for this network/subnetwork, or false otherwise.   |
| addressPool   | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Address pools for the network/subnetwork. The cardinality can be 0 when VIM is allowed to allocate all addresses in the CIDR except for the address of the network/subnetwork gateway.   |
| metadata  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair  | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.  |
| NOTE: In these cases, changing the parameter is such a fundamental change that a new virtualised network resource should be created instead of updating an existing network resource. |           |             |               |  |

#### 8.4.4.5 VirtualNetworkPortData information element

##### 8.4.4.5.1 Description

The VirtualNetworkPortData information element encapsulates information to allocate or update virtual network ports for network resources. A network port resource is a communication endpoint instantiated under a network resource.

#### 8.4.4.5.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkPortData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.5.2-1.

**Table 8.4.4.5.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkPortData information element**

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|---|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| portType  | M         | 0..1        | String        | Type of network port. Examples of types are access ports (layer 2 or 3), or trunk ports (layer 1) that become transport for multiple layer 2 or layer 3 networks. Cardinality can be "0" if the consumer does not need to provide specific port type to create a "normal port" (i.e. by default, a "normal port" will be created). See note 1. |
| networkId   | M         | 0..1        | Identifier    | Identifier of the network that the port belongs to. When creating a port, such port needs to be part of a network. Cardinality can be 0 when VirtualNetworkPortData is part of Update Virtualised Network Resource (see clause 7.4.1.4.2). See note 2.   |
| bandwidth   | M         | 0..1        | Number        | Bandwidth of the virtual network port (in Mbps). Cardinality can be "0" for virtual network ports without any specified bandwidth requirements.  |
| portQoS   | M         | 0..N        | NetworkQoS    | Provides information about Quality of Service attributes applicable to the port. See clause 8.4.4.3. Cardinality can be "0" for the virtual network ports if no specific without any specified QoS requirements are requested.   |
| timeSync  | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Provides information about configuring time synchronization applicable to the port. It is not applicable for the case of subports.   |
| metadata  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair  | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.  |
| NOTE 1: After instantiation, the normal port can be referenced as a parent port or subport in a trunk port resource (see clause 8.4.4.6).   |           |             |               |  |
| NOTE 2: In this case, changing the parameter is such a fundamental change that a new virtualised network resource should be created instead of updating an existing network resource. |           |             |               |  |

#### 8.4.4.6 VirtualTrunkData information element

##### 8.4.4.6.1 Description

The VirtualTrunkData information element encapsulates information to allocate virtual trunk. A virtual trunk is a logical network resource which can be used to multiplex packets coming from and going to multiple networks using one trunk port. Trunk is modelled as a collection of network ports, one parent port and a sequence of subports.

##### 8.4.4.6.2 Attributes

The VirtualTrunkData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.6.2-1.

**Table 8.4.4.6.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualTrunkData information element**

| Attribute    | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                      | Description  |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|--|--|
| parentPortId | M         | 1           | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetworkPort) | References the network port that used as parent port of the trunk to be created.   |
| subportList  | M         | 0..N        | TrunkSubport                                 | Provides information on subports associate to the trunk to be created. Cardinality can be "0" to allow for trunk without subport at creation time. |

### 8.4.4.7 TrunkSubport information element format

#### 8.4.4.7.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the TrunkSubport information element.

#### 8.4.4.7.2 Attributes

The TrunkSubport information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.7.2-1.

**Table 8.4.4.7.2-1: Attributes of the TrunkSubport information element**

| Attribute  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content  | Description   |
|--|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| subportId  | M         | 1           | Identifier<br>(Reference to<br>VirtualNetwork<br>Port) | References the network port that used as subport of the trunk.  |
| segmentationType   | M         | 0..1        | Enum   | The encapsulation type for the traffics coming in and out of the trunk subport. See note 1.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VLAN: the subport uses VLAN as encapsulation type.</li> <li>VXLAN: the subport uses VXLAN as encapsulation type.</li> <li>NVGRE: the subport uses NVGRE as encapsulation type.</li> <li>INHERIT: the subport gets its segmentation type from the network it is connected to.</li> </ul> Cardinality 0 means default value VLAN is used. |
| segmentationId   | M         | 1           | Integer  | The segmentation identifier of the subport, which is used to differentiate the traffics on different networks coming in and out of the trunk port. See note 1.  |
| isAutomaticDiscovery   | M         | 0..1        | Boolean  | It indicates if additional parameters are exchanged through the use of a routing protocol. See note 2.  |
| NOTE 1: The segmentationType and segmentationId specified on the subport is intentionally decoupled from the networkType and segmentationId of the network that the subport attached to. For example, it is possible to configure the Network with (networkType = vxlan, segmentationId = 5 000) and create subport with (segmentationType = vlan, segmentationId = 100). The traffic flow can be remapped as necessary. |           |             |  |   |
| NOTE 2: In the case of VXLAN as encapsulation type, when using the TrunkSubport information element to describe a Network Virtualisation Edge (NVE), this may exchange additional information with other NVEs through the use of routing protocols such as iBGP. The isAutomaticDiscovery attribute shall not be present if segmentationType field is not set to VXLAN.  |           |             |  |   |

### 8.4.4.8 UpdateTrunkData information element

#### 8.4.4.8.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the UpdateTrunkData information element.

#### 8.4.4.8.2 Attributes

The UpdateTrunkData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.4.8.2-1.

**Table 8.4.4.8.2-1: Attributes of the UpdateTrunkData information element**

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content  | Description   |
|---|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| portId  | M         | 0..N        | Identifier<br>(Reference to<br>VirtualNetworkPort) | Provides information on subport(s) to be deleted from a trunk resource. See note. |
| subportList   | M         | 0..N        | TrunkSubport                                       | Provides information on subport(s) to be added to a trunk resource. See note.     |
| NOTE: Only one type of the two attributes (portId or subportList) shall be present. |           |             |  |   |

## 8.4.5 Information elements related to Virtual Network

### 8.4.5.1 Introduction

The information elements in this group encapsulates information of an instantiated virtualised network resource. In the NFVI, a virtual network transports information among the network interfaces of VM instances and physical network interfaces, providing the necessary connectivity.

### 8.4.5.2 VirtualNetwork information element

#### 8.4.5.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualNetwork information element.

#### 8.4.5.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetwork information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.5.2.2-1.

**Table 8.4.5.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetwork information element**

| Attribute           | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                 | Description  |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|---|--|
| networkResourceId   | M         | 1           | Identifier                              | Identifier of the virtualised network resource.  |
| networkResourceName | M         | 0..1        | String                                  | Name of the virtualised network resource.  |
| subnetId            | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to NetworkSubnet) | References the network subnet. Only present if the network provides layer 3 connectivity. See clause 8.4.5.3.  |
| networkPort         | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkPort                      | Provides information on an instantiated virtual network port.  |
| bandwidth           | M         | 1           | Number                                  | Minimum network bandwidth (in Mbps).   |
| networkType         | M         | 1           | String                                  | Type of network that maps to the virtualised network. This list is extensible. Examples are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "local";</li> <li>• "vlan";</li> <li>• "vxlan";</li> <li>• "gre";</li> <li>• "l3-vpn";</li> <li>• "ipsec";</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul>  |
| providerNetwork     | M         | 0..1        | String                                  | Name of the infrastructure provider network used to realize the virtual network. Cardinality can be "0" to cover the case where virtual network is not based on infrastructure provider network.   |
| segmentationId      | M         | 0..1        | Integer                                 | The segmentation identifier of the network that maps to the virtualised network, for which, the segmentation model is defined by the networkType attribute. For instance, for a "vlan" networkType, it corresponds to the vlan identifier; and for a "gre" networkType, it corresponds to a gre key. Cardinality can be "0" to cover the case where networkType is flat network without any specific segmentation. |
| networkQoS          | M         | 0..N        | NetworkQoS                              | Provides information about Quality of Service attributes that the network supports. See clause 8.4.4.3. Cardinality can be "0" for virtual network without any QoS requirements.   |

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                  | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--|--|
| isShared          | M         | 1           | Boolean                                  | Defines whether the virtualised network is shared among consumers.   |
| sharingCriteria   | M         | 0..1        | Not specified                            | Indicates the sharing criteria for this network. This criteria might be a list of authorized consumers.<br>Only present for shared networks. |
| zoneId            | M         | 0..1        | Identifier                               | If present, it identifies the resource zone where the virtual network resources have been allocated.   |
| operationalState  | M         | 1           | Enum                                     | Operational state of the virtualised network.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ENABLED</li> <li>• DISABLED</li> </ul>  |
| metadata          | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                             | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.                  |
| connectedNetworks | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetwork) | Specifies the virtual network resources to which the newly created virtual network is intended to be explicitly interconnected.              |

### 8.4.5.3 NetworkSubnet information element

#### 8.4.5.3.1 Description

The NetworkSubnet information element encapsulates information of an instantiated virtualised sub-network.

#### 8.4.5.3.2 Attributes

The NetworkSubnet information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.5.3.2-1.

**Table 8.4.5.3.2-1: Attributes of the NetworkSubnet information element**

| Attribute     | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                  | Description   |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| resourceId    | M         | 1           | Identifier                               | Identifier of the virtualised sub-network.  |
| networkId     | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetwork) | References the virtualised network that the virtualised sub-network is attached to. The cardinality can be 0 to cover the case where this type is used to describe the L3 attributes of a network rather than a subnetwork. |
| ipVersion     | M         | 1           | Enum                                     | IP version of the network/subnetwork.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPV4</li> <li>• IPV6</li> </ul>  |
| gatewayIp     | M         | 1           | IpAddress                                | IP address of the network/subnetwork gateway.   |
| cidr          | M         | 1           | Not specified                            | CIDR of the network/subnetwork, i.e. network address and subnet mask.   |
| isDhcpEnabled | M         | 1           | Boolean                                  | True when DHCP is enabled for this network/subnetwork, or false otherwise.  |
| addressPool   | M         | 0..N        | Not specified                            | Address pools for the network/subnetwork. The cardinality can be 0 when VIM is allowed to allocate all addresses in the CIDR except for the address of the network/subnetwork gateway.                                      |
| metadata      | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                             | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.   |

## 8.4.5.4 VirtualNetworkPort information element

### 8.4.5.4.1 Description

The VirtualNetworkPort information element encapsulates information of an instantiated virtual network port. A network port resource is a communication endpoint instantiated under a network resource.

### 8.4.5.4.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkPort information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.5.4.2-1.

**Table 8.4.5.4.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkPort information element**

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content   | Description   |
|---|-----------|-------------|---|---|
| resourceId  | M         | 1           | Identifier  | Identifier of the virtual network port.   |
| networkId   | M         | 1           | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetwork)          | References the network that the port belongs to. When creating a port, such port needs to be part of a network.   |
| attachedResourceId  | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetworkInterface) | References the attached resource to the network port (e.g. a virtualised compute resource, or identifier of the virtual network interface).<br>Cardinality can be "0" if there is no specific resource connected to the network port.         |
| portType  | M         | 0..1        | String  | Type of network port. Examples of types are access ports (layer 2 or 3), or trunk ports (layer 1) that become transport for multiple layer 2 or layer 3 networks.<br>Cardinality can be "0" if the network port is a "normal port". See note. |
| bandwidth   | M         | 0..1        | Number  | Bandwidth of the virtual network port (in Mbps). Cardinality can be "0" for virtual network ports without any specific allocated bandwidth.   |
| portQoS   | M         | 0..N        | NetworkQoS  | Provides information about Quality of Service attributes applicable to the port. See clause 8.4.4.3.<br>Cardinality can be "0" for virtual network ports without any specific QoS requirements.   |
| operationalState  | M         | 1           | Enum  | Operational state of the virtual network port.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ENABLED</li> <li>• DISABLED</li> </ul>  |
| timeSync  | M         | 0..N        | Not specified                                     | Provides information about configuring time synchronization applicable to the port. It is not applicable for the case of subports.  |
| metadata  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair                                      | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.   |
| NOTE: After instantiation, the normal port can be referenced as a parent port or subport in a trunk port resource (see clause 8.4.4.6). |           |             |   |   |

### 8.4.5.5 VirtualTrunk information element

#### 8.4.5.5.1 Description

The VirtualTrunk information element encapsulates information of an instantiated virtual trunk. A virtual trunk is a logical network resource which can be used to multiplex packets coming from and going to multiple networks using one network port. Trunk is modelled as a collection of network ports, one parent port and a sequence of subports.

#### 8.4.5.5.2 Attributes

The VirtualTrunk information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.5.5.2-1.

**Table 8.4.5.5.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualTrunk information element**

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                      | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| trunkResourceId  | M         | 1           | Identifier                                   | Identifier of the virtual trunk.  |
| parentPortId     | M         | 1           | Identifier (Reference to VirtualNetworkPort) | References the network port that used as parent port of the trunk.  |
| subportList      | M         | 0..N        | TrunkSubport                                 | Provides information on subport of the trunk.   |
| operationalState | M         | 1           | Enum   | Operational state of the virtualised network.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ENABLED</li> <li>• DISABLED</li> </ul> |

### 8.4.6 Information elements related to Virtual Storage Flavour

#### 8.4.6.1 Introduction

The information elements in this group encapsulate information to allocate or update virtualised storage resources.

#### 8.4.6.2 VirtualStorageFlavour information element

##### 8.4.6.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualStorageFlavour information element. The VirtualStorageFlavour information element encapsulates information for storage flavours. A storage flavour includes information about the size of the storage, and the type of storage.

##### 8.4.6.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualStorageFlavour information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.6.2.2-1.

**Table 8.4.6.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualStorageFlavour information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content            | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------|--|
| flavourId         | M         | 0..1        | Identifier         | Identifier of the storage flavour.<br>Cardinality can be "0" if no specific virtual storage flavour is referred.   |
| storageAttributes | M         | 1           | VirtualStorageData | Contains information about the size of virtualised storage resource (e.g. size of volume, in GB), the type of storage (e.g. volume, object), and support for RDMA. See clause 8.4.6.3. |

### 8.4.6.3 VirtualStorageData information element

#### 8.4.6.3.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualStorageData information element.

#### 8.4.6.3.2 Attributes

The VirtualStorageData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.6.3.2-1.

**Table 8.4.6.3.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualStorageData information element**

| Attribute     | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| typeOfStorage | M         | 1           | String  | Type of virtualised storage resource (e.g. volume, object).        |
| sizeOfStorage | M         | 1           | Number  | Size of virtualised storage resource (e.g. size of volume, in GB). |
| rdmaEnabled   | O         | 0..1        | Boolean | Indicates if the storage supports RDMA.                            |

## 8.4.7 Information elements related to Virtual Storage

### 8.4.7.1 Introduction

The information elements in this group encapsulate information of an instantiated virtualised storage resource.

### 8.4.7.2 VirtualStorage information element

#### 8.4.7.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualStorage information element. The VirtualStorage information element encapsulates information of an instantiated virtualised storage resource.

#### 8.4.7.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualStorage information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.7.2.2-1.

**Table 8.4.7.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualStorage information element**

| Attribute     | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| storageId     | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised storage resource.   |
| storageName   | M         | 0..1        | String     | Name of the virtualised storage resource.   |
| flavourId     | M         | 0..1        | Identifier | Identifier of the storage flavour used to instantiate this virtual storage. Cardinality can be "0" if no specific virtual storage flavour is referred.  |
| typeOfStorage | M         | 1           | String     | Type of virtualised storage resource (e.g. volume, object).   |
| sizeOfStorage | M         | 1           | Number     | Size of virtualised storage resource (e.g. size of volume, in GB).  |
| rdmaEnabled   | O         | 1           | Boolean    | Indicates if the storage supports RDMA.   |
| ownerId       | M         | 0..1        | Identifier | Identifier of the virtualised resource that owns and uses such a virtualised storage resource. The value can be NULL if the virtualised storage is not attached yet to any other resource (e.g. a virtual machine). |
| zoneId        | M         | 0..1        | Identifier | If present, it identifies the resource zone where the virtual storage resources have been allocated.  |
| hostId        | M         | 0..1        | Identifier | Identifier of the host where the virtualised storage resource is allocated. A cardinality of 0 refers to distributed storage solutions.   |

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content      | Description  |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--|
| operationalState | M         | 1           | Enum         | Operational state of the resource.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ENABLED</li> <li>• DISABLED</li> </ul> |
| metadata         | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.      |

## 8.4.8 Information elements related to Affinity or AntiAffinity

### 8.4.8.1 Introduction

This clause defines information elements needed to express affinity and anti-affinity of a given virtualised resource (i.e. a virtualised compute, storage or network resource).

Two ways of specifying affinity or anti-affinity can be distinguished: Explicit resource lists and named resource groups. In case of an explicit resource list, the consumer manages the list of resources the actual resource is requested to be affine or anti-affine with, and builds the list as more resources are created. In case of a named resource group, the consumer needs to create the group first by invoking the appropriate operation to create a Compute/Storage/Network resource affinity or anti-affinity constraints group defined in clauses 7.3.1.9, 7.4.1.6 and 7.5.1.9. Subsequently, as part of resource creation, the consumer passes the name(s) or identifier(s) of the group(s) to the producer which manages and builds the group of resources.

The VIM shall support both explicit resource lists and named resource groups for affinity/anti-affinity. The VNFM shall support at least one of these options.

### 8.4.8.2 AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint information element

#### 8.4.8.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint information element.

#### 8.4.8.2.2 Attributes

The AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.8.2.2-1.

Table 8.4.8.2.2-1: Attributes of the AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint information element

| Attribute                             | Qualifier  | Cardinality | Content                            | Description  |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------------|------------------------------------|--|
| type                                  | M  | 1           | Enum                               | Indicates whether this is an affinity or anti-affinity constraint.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AFFINITY</li> <li>ANTI_AFFINITY</li> </ul>   |
| scope                                 | M  | 0..1        | Enum                               | Qualifies the scope of the constraint.<br>In case of compute resource, the values are as follows:<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVI_POP</li> <li>NFVI_NODE</li> <li>etc.</li> </ul> In case of ports, the values are as follows:<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VIRTUAL_SWITCH_OR_ROUTER</li> <li>PHYSICAL_NIC</li> <li>PHYSICAL_NETWORK</li> <li>NFVI_NODE</li> <li>etc.</li> </ul> In case of networks, the values are as follows:<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PHYSICAL_NIC</li> <li>PHYSICAL_NETWORK</li> <li>NFVI_NODE</li> <li>etc.</li> </ul> In case of subnets, it should be ignored.<br>Defaults to "NFVI_NODE" if absent. |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList    | M  | 0..1        | AffinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList | Consumer-managed list of identifiers of virtualised resources with which the actual resource is requested to be affine or anti-affine.<br>Either affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList or affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceGroupId but not both shall be present.  |
| affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceGroupId | M  | 0..1        | Identifier                         | Identifier of the producer-managed group of virtualised resources with which the actual resource is requested to be affine or anti-affine.<br>Either affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList or affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceGroupId but not both shall be present.  |
| NOTE:                                 | It is a prerequisite for the consumer to create the group using the appropriate operation Create Compute/Storage/Network Resource Affinity Or AntiAffinity Constraints Group defined in clauses 7.3.1.9, 7.4.1.6 and 7.5.1.9.  |             |                                    |  |
| CONDITION:                            | If explicit resource lists for affinity/anti-affinity (see clause 8.4.8.1) are supported, the affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList information element shall be supported. If named resource groups for affinity/anti-affinity (see clause 8.4.8.1) are supported, the affinityOrAntiAffinityResourceGroupId information element shall be supported. The mechanisms shall not be mixed in the scope of a resourceGroup (also known as VIM tenant). |             |                                    |  |

### 8.4.8.3 AffinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList information element

#### 8.4.8.3.1 Description

The AffinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList information element defines an explicit list of resources to express affinity or anti-affinity between these resources and a current resource. The scope of the affinity or anti-affinity can also be defined.

### 8.4.8.3.2 Attributes

The AffinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.8.3.2-1.

**Table 8.4.8.3.2-1: Attributes of the AffinityOrAntiAffinityResourceList information element**

| Attribute  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description                                   |
|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| resourceId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | List of identifiers of virtualised resources. |

## 8.4.9 VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification

### 8.4.9.1 Description

This notification informs the receiver of changes in the virtualised resources that are allocated or their groups. The support of the notification is mandatory.

### 8.4.9.2 Trigger conditions

This notification is produced when the virtualised resource will be impacted due to changes in underlying resources produced by maintenance and operation of the NFVI, including:

- Maintenance of NFVI components, e.g. physical maintenance/repair, hypervisor software updates, etc.
- Evacuation of physical hosts.
- Addition and removal of physical resources.
- Operation and management of NFVI resources, e.g. to support energy efficiency or resource usage optimization.

NOTE 1: All these operations could trigger further actions, e.g. migration of virtualised resources.

The VIM shall evaluate the NFVI operation and maintenance constraints (expressed as policies) (as specified in Annex A) available to the VIM (including system configured constraints and constraints from the VNFD) applicable to the virtualised resources and their groups to determine when notifications need to be produced and what content they need to provide for NFVI operation and maintenance.

The VIM shall provide the capability to provide notifications identifying the group of virtualised resources. If an NFVI operation and maintenance session is going to impact more than one member of a group, this notification about identifying the group of virtualised resources shall be provided to all subscribers before any member of the group is impacted.

NOTE 2: It is up to the protocol design stage to determine whether this notification can be modelled as a "bulk" operation that allows to send multiple notifications in one request, or as a series of operations that notify an (upcoming) impact at a time.

An end of changes to the group shall be notified when all impacts to the group members have been completed.

### 8.4.9.3 Attributes

The VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.9.3-1.

**Table 8.4.9.3-1: Attributes of the VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification notification**

| Attribute                  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|----------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| changedId                  | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Unique identifier of the change on the virtualised resource.   |
| virtualisedResourceId      | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of the instantiated virtualised resource for which the change notification is issued. This identifier value shall be the same as the one returned when the allocation of such virtualised resource was acknowledged.              |
| virtualisedResourceGroupId | M         | 0..1        | Identifier    | Identifier of the affinity or anti-affinity group of the virtualised resource for which the change notification is issued. This identifier value shall be the same as the one returned when the affinity or anti-affinity group was created. |
| endOfChange                | M         | 0..1        | Boolean       | If the value is True it indicates the end of the changes of virtualised resources for which the notification of type of change is issued.  |
| changeTime                 | M         | 1           | DateTime      | Specifies the anticipated time of change of the virtualised resource for which the change notification is issued or the ending time of changes of virtualised resources if the value of the endOfChange is "true".                           |
| vimId                      | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of the VIM reporting the change.  |
| changeType                 | M         | 1           | String        | Categorizes the type of change. Possible values can be related to maintenance and operation of the NFVI, including e.g. normal, maintenance, evacuation, optimization, etc.  |
| changedResourceData        | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Details of the changes of the resource. Its content can differ based on the different values of the attribute changeType.  |

## 8.4.10 UserData information element

### 8.4.10.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the UserData information element.

### 8.4.10.2 Attributes

The UserData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.10.2-1.

**Table 8.4.10.2-1: Attributes of the UserData information element**

| Attribute       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content          | Description   |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|------------------|---|
| content         | M         | 1           | String           | Contains the user data to customize a virtualised compute resource at boot-time.  |
| method          | M         | 0..1        | Enum             | Method used as transportation media to convey the content of the UserData and the CertificateData to the virtualised compute resource.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CONFIG_DRIVE</li> <li>• CONFIG_DRIVE_MIME_multi-part</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul> |
| certificateData | M         | 0..N        | Certificate Data | Contains the additional user data to store certificate data for the VNF composed of (fully or partially) virtualised compute resource at boot-time. Shall be present if delegation-mode is used. Otherwise it shall be absent.  |

## 8.4.11 CertificateData information element

### 8.4.11.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the CertificateData information element.

### 8.4.11.2 Attributes

The CertificateData information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.4.11.2-1.

**Table 8.4.11.2-1: Attributes of the CertificateData information element**

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|---|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| privateKey  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Private key paired with signed public key. VNFM shall generate both private key and public key and set this attribute. See note.   |
| certificateFile   | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Signed certificate including public key and certificate chain. See note.   |
| keystoreFile  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Keystore which includes the private key, signed certificate and certificate chain, e.g. pkcs#12, pfx. Credentials to read this file shall be provided to the VNF instance by outbound. See note. |
| certSubjectData   | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Subject to be signed.  |
| certificateProfileName  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Name of certificate profile to be signed.  |
| NOTE: Either set of "privatekey" and "certificateFile" or "keystoreFile" but not both shall be present. |           |             |               |  |

## 8.5 Information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources Performance Management

### 8.5.1 Introduction

The clauses below define information elements and notifications related to virtualised resources performance management.

### 8.5.2 ObjectSelection information element

#### 8.5.2.1 Description

This information element allows to specify resources on which performance information will be provided.

The object types for this information element will be the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2] for virtualised resources.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

#### 8.5.2.2 Attributes

The ObjectSelection information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.2.2-1.

**Table 8.5.2.2-1: Attributes of the ObjectSelection information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| objectType        | M         | 0..N        | String     | Provides the measured object type.<br>The object types for this information element will be the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2] for virtualised resources.<br>One of the two alternatives (objectType+ objectFilter or objectInstancelid) shall be present.   |
| objectFilter      | M         | 0..1        | Filter     | Filter applied on the object types to specify on which object instances the performance information is requested to be collected. One of the two alternatives (objectType + objectFilter or objectInstancelid) shall be present.   |
| objectInstancelid | M         | 0..N        | Identifier | Identifies the object instances for which performance information is requested to be collected.<br>The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.<br>One of the two alternatives (objectType + objectFilter or objectInstancelid) shall be present. |

## 8.5.3 PmJob information element

### 8.5.3.1 Description

This information element provides the details of the PM Job.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

### 8.5.3.2 Attributes

The PmJob information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.3.2-1.

**Table 8.5.3.2-1: Attributes of the PmJob information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content         | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|--|
| pmJobId           | M         | 1           | Identifier      | Identifier of the PM job.  |
| objectSelector    | M         | 1           | ObjectSelection | Defines the object instances for which performance information is requested to be collected.<br>The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.<br>See clause 8.5.1. |
| performanceMetric | M         | 0..N        | String          | Defines the type of performance metric(s) for the specified object instances. Valid values are specified as "Measurement Name" values in clause 7.1 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2].<br>At least one of the two (performance metric or group) shall be present.   |

| Attribute  | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|--|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| performanceMetricGroup   | M         | 0..N        | String        | Group of performance metrics.<br>A metric group is a pre-defined list of metrics, known to the producer that it can decompose to individual metrics. Valid values are specified as "Measurement Group" values in clause 7.1 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2].<br>At least one of the two (performance metric or group) shall be present. |
| collectionPeriod   | M         | 1           | Not specified | Specifies the periodicity at which the producer will collect performance information. See note.  |
| reportingPeriod  | M         | 1           | Not specified | Specifies the periodicity at which the producer will report to the consumer about performance information. See note.   |
| reportingBoundary  | O         | 0..1        | Not specified | Identifies a boundary after which the reporting will stop.<br>The boundary shall allow a single reporting as well as periodic reporting up to the boundary.  |
| NOTE: At the end of each reportingPeriod, the producer will inform the consumer about availability of the performance data collected for each completed collection period during this reportingPeriod. While the exact definition of the types for collectionPeriod and reportingPeriod is part of the protocol design, it is recommended that the reportingPeriod be equal or a multiple of the collectionPeriod. In the latter case, the performance data for the collection periods within one reporting period would be reported together. |           |             |               |  |

## 8.5.4 Threshold information element

### 8.5.4.1 Description

This information element provides the details of a threshold.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

### 8.5.4.2 Attributes

The Threshold information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.4.2-1.

**Table 8.5.4.2-1: Attributes of the Threshold information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content         | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|--|
| thresholdId       | M         | 1           | Identifier      | Identifier of the threshold.   |
| objectSelector    | M         | 1           | ObjectSelection | Defines the object instances associated with the threshold.<br>The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface. See clause 8.5.1. |
| performanceMetric | M         | 1           | String          | Defines the performance metric associated with the threshold. Valid values are specified as "Measurement Name" values in clause 7.1 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2].  |
| thresholdType     | M         | 1           | Enum            | Type of threshold. The list of possible values is part of the protocol design, and might include: single/multi valued threshold, static/dynamic threshold, template based threshold.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SIMPLE: Single-valued static threshold</li> <li>• etc.</li> </ul>                       |

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| thresholdDetails | M         | 1           | Not specified | Details of the threshold: value to be crossed, details on the notification to be generated. |

## 8.5.5 PerformanceReport information element

### 8.5.5.1 Description

This information element defines the format of a performance report provided by the producer to the consumer on a specified object instance or a set of them.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

### 8.5.5.2 Attributes

The PerformanceReport information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.5.2-1.

**Table 8.5.5.2-1: Attributes of the PerformanceReport information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                 | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-------------------------|--|
| performanceReport | M         | 1..N        | PerformanceReport Entry | List of performance information entries. See clause 8.5.6. |

## 8.5.6 PerformanceReportEntry information element

### 8.5.6.1 Description

This information element defines a single performance report entry. This performance report entry is for a given metric of a given object instance, but can include multiple collected values.

The object types for this information element will be the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2] for virtualised resources.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

### 8.5.6.2 Attributes

The PerformanceReportEntry information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.6.2-1.

**Table 8.5.6.2-1: Attributes of the PerformanceReportEntry information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| objectType        | M         | 1           | String     | Defines the object type<br>The object types for this information element will be the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2] for virtualised resources.   |
| objectInstanceIcd | M         | 1           | Identifier | Object instance for which the performance metric is reported.<br>The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface. |

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content               | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------------|---|
| performanceMetric | M         | 1           | String                | Name of the metric collected. This attribute's value contains the related "Measurement Name" value as defined in clause 7.1 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. |
| performanceValue  | M         | 1..N        | PerformanceValueEntry | List of performance values with associated timestamp, and measurement context (see ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]).  |

## 8.5.7 PerformanceValueEntry information element

### 8.5.7.1 Description

This information element defines a single performance value with its associated time stamp and measurement context (see ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]).

### 8.5.7.2 Attributes

The PerformanceValueEntry information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.7.2-1.

**Table 8.5.7.2-1: Attributes of the PerformanceValueEntry information element**

| Attribute          | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| timeStamp          | M         | 1           | DateTime      | Timestamp indicating when the data was collected.  |
| performanceValue   | M         | 1           | Value         | Value of the metric collected. The type of this attribute corresponds to the related "Measurement Unit" as defined in clause 7.1 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. |
| measurementContext | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Measurement context of the metric collected. The specific measurement context for each kind of performance metrics is defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2].    |

## 8.5.8 PerformanceInformationAvailableNotification

### 8.5.8.1 Description

This notification informs the receiver that performance information is available. Delivery mechanism for the performance reports is not specified in the present document.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

### 8.5.8.2 Trigger Conditions

- New performance information is available.

### 8.5.8.3 Attributes

The PerformanceInformationAvailableNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.8.3-1.

**Table 8.5.8.3-1: Attributes of the PerformanceInformationAvailableNotification notification**

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| objectInstanceId | M         | 1..N        | Identifier | Object instances for which performance information is available.<br>The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface. |

## 8.5.9 ThresholdCrossedNotification

### 8.5.9.1 Description

This notification informs the receiver that a threshold value has been crossed.

The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

### 8.5.9.2 Trigger Condition

A Threshold has been crossed. Depending on threshold type, there might be a single or multiple crossing values.

### 8.5.9.3 Attributes

The ThresholdCrossedNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.5.9.3-1.

**Table 8.5.9.3-1: Attributes of the ThresholdCrossedNotification notification**

| Attribute          | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                | Description  |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------|--|--|
| thresholdId        | M         | 1           | Identifier<br>(Reference to Threshold) | Threshold which has been crossed.  |
| crossingDirection  | M         | 1           | Enum                                   | Indication of whether the threshold was crossed in upward or downward direction.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UP</li> <li>• DOWN</li> </ul>   |
| objectInstanceId   | M         | 1           | Identifier                             | Object instance for which the threshold has been crossed.<br>The object instances for this information element will be virtualised resources corresponding to the measured object types defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2]. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface. |
| performanceMetric  | M         | 1           | String                                 | Performance metric associated with the threshold. Valid values are specified as "Measurement Name" values in clause 7.1 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2].  |
| performanceValue   | M         | 1           | Value                                  | Value of the metric that resulted in threshold crossing.   |
| measurementContext | M         | 0..1        | Not specified                          | Measurement context of the metric collected. The specific measurement context for each kind of performance metrics is defined in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 [2].  |

## 8.6 Information elements and notifications related to Virtualised Resources Fault Management

### 8.6.1 Introduction

This clause defines information elements and notifications related to virtualised resources fault management.

### 8.6.2 AlarmNotification

#### 8.6.2.1 Description

This notification informs the receiver of alarms resulting from the faults related to the virtualised resources managed by the VIM. The notification is mandatory.

#### 8.6.2.2 Trigger conditions

- An alarm has been created.
- An alarm has been updated, e.g. if the severity of the alarm has changed.

#### 8.6.2.3 Attributes

The AlarmNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.6.2.3-1.

**Table 8.6.2.3-1: Attributes of the AlarmNotification notification**

| Attribute | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| alarm     | M         | 1           | Alarm   | Information about an alarm including alarmId, affected resourceId and faultDetails. See clause 8.6.4. |

### 8.6.3 AlarmClearedNotification

#### 8.6.3.1 Description

This notification informs the receiver of the clearing of an alarm related to the virtualised resources managed by the VIM. The alarm's perceived severity has been set to "cleared" since the corresponding fault has been solved. The notification is mandatory.

#### 8.6.3.2 Trigger conditions

An alarm has been cleared.

#### 8.6.3.3 Attributes

The AlarmClearedNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.6.3.3-1.

**Table 8.6.3.3-1: Attributes of the AlarmClearedNotification notification**

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                         | Description                                      |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------------------|--|
| alarmId          | M         | 1           | Identifier (Reference to Alarm) | Alarm identifier.                                |
| alarmClearedTime | M         | 1           | DateTime                        | Timestamp indicating when the alarm was cleared. |

## 8.6.4 Alarm information element

### 8.6.4.1 Description

The Alarm information element encapsulates information about an alarm.

The Managed Objects for this information element will be virtualised resources. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface.

The allowed values for the faultType attribute depend on the type of the related managed object as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4].

The values of isRootCause and correlatedAlarmID are set by the VIM, based on its functional implementation of alarm correlation (see VIM functional requirement on alarm correlation VIM.Irfm.001 in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 010 [5]).

### 8.6.4.2 Attributes

The Alarm information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.6.4.2-1.

**Table 8.6.4.2-1: Attributes of the Alarm information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| alarmId           | M         | 1           | Identifier | Alarm identifier.  |
| managedObjectId   | M         | 1           | Identifier | Identifier of the affected managed Object.<br>The Managed Objects for this information element will be virtualised resources. These resources shall be known by the Virtualised Resource Management interface (see clause 7.8). A virtualised resource can have fault monitored sub-object types and identification information is carried as defined in the respective Alarm definition as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4], e.g. using the "faultDetails" attribute. |
| alarmRaisedTime   | M         | 1           | DateTime   | Timestamp indicating when the alarm was first raised by the managed object.  |
| alarmChangedTime  | M         | 0..1        | DateTime   | Timestamp indicating when the alarm was last changed. It shall be present if the alarm has been updated.   |
| alarmClearedTime  | M         | 0..1        | DateTime   | Timestamp indicating when the alarm was cleared. It shall be present if the alarm has been cleared.  |
| state             | M         | 1           | Enum       | State of the alarm.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FIRED</li> <li>• UPDATED</li> <li>• CLEARED</li> </ul>  |
| perceivedSeverity | M         | 1           | Enum       | Perceived severity of the virtualised managed object failure.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CRITICAL</li> <li>• MAJOR</li> <li>• MINOR</li> <li>• WARNING</li> <li>• INDETERMINATE</li> <li>• CLEARED</li> </ul> Valid values applicable to specific Alarms are specified as "Perceived severity" values of the Alarm applicable to Vi-Vnfm reference point, as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4].   |
| eventTime         | M         | 1           | DateTime   | Timestamp indicating when the fault was observed.  |

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                         | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------------------|---|
| eventType         | M         | 1           | Enum                            | Type of the event. The allowed values for the eventType attribute use the event type defined in Recommendation ITU-T X.733 [1]:<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• COMMUNICATION_ALARM</li> <li>• PROCESSING_ALARM</li> <li>• ENVIRONMENT_ALARM</li> <li>• QOS_ALARM</li> <li>• EQUIPMENT_ALARM</li> </ul> Valid values applicable to specific Alarms are specified as "Event type" values of the Alarm applicable to Vi-Vnfm reference point, as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4]. |
| faultType         | M         | 0..1        | String                          | Information related to the type of the fault. The allowed values for the faultType attribute depend on the type of the related managed object. Valid values applicable to specific Alarms are specified as "Alarm definition identifier" values of the Alarm applicable to Vi-Vnfm reference point, as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4].  |
| probableCause     | M         | 1           | String                          | Information about the probable cause of the fault. Valid values applicable to specific Alarms are specified as "Probable cause" values of the Alarm applicable to Vi-Vnfm reference point, as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4].   |
| isRootCause       | M         | 1           | Boolean                         | Parameter indicating if this fault is the root for other correlated alarms. If TRUE, then the alarms listed in the parameter correlatedAlarmId are caused by this fault.  |
| correlatedAlarmId | M         | 0..N        | Identifier (Reference to Alarm) | List of other alarms correlated to this fault.  |
| faultDetails      | M         | 0..N        | Not specified                   | Provides additional information about the fault. Valid values applicable to specific Alarms are specified as "Fault details" values of the Alarm applicable to Vi-Vnfm reference point, as defined in clause 7.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 045 [4].  |

## 8.7 Information elements and notifications related to Reservation

### 8.7.1 Introduction

The Virtualised Resource Reservation information elements contain information related to reservations of virtualisation resources used for input and output in the Compute, Network and Storage Virtualised Resource Reservation Management interfaces.

The clauses below define information elements related to reservation.

### 8.7.2 ReservedVirtualCompute information element

#### 8.7.2.1 Description

The compute resource reservation information element encapsulates information about a reservation for virtualised compute resources. It includes information about virtual compute resource pool and virtualisation container reservations.

#### 8.7.2.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualCompute information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.2.2-1.

**Table 8.7.2.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualCompute information element**

| Attribute                       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                         | Description  |
|---------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------------------|--|
| reservationId                   | M         | 1           | Identifier                      | Identifier of the resource reservation that has been reserved.   |
| computePoolReserved             | M         | 0..1        | ReservedComputePool             | Information about compute resources that have been reserved, e.g. {"cpu_cores": 90, "vm_instances": 10, "ram": 10 000}. See clause 8.7.3.2.  |
| virtualisationContainerReserved | M         | 0..N        | ReservedVirtualisationContainer | Information about the virtualisation container(s) that have been reserved. See clause 8.7.5.2.   |
| reservationStatus               | M         | 1           | Enum                            | Status of the compute resource reservation, e.g. to indicate if a reservation is being used.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RESERVATION_BEING_USED</li> <li>RESERVATION_NOT_USED</li> </ul>           |
| startTime                       | M         | 0..1        | DateTime                        | Indication when the consumption of the resources starts. If not present, resources are reserved for immediate use.   |
| endTime                         | M         | 0..1        | DateTime                        | Indication when the reservation ends (when it is expected that the resources will no longer be needed) and used by the VIM to schedule the reservation. If not present, resources are reserved for unlimited usage time. |
| expiryTime                      | M         | 0..1        | DateTime                        | Indication when the VIM can release the reservation in case no allocation request against this reservation was made.   |

## 8.7.3 Information elements related to Compute Pool Reservation

### 8.7.3.1 Introduction

The compute reservation information elements encapsulate information about virtual compute resource pool reservations. The information elements contain details about number of CPU cores, number of virtualisation container instances, size of virtual memory, as well as different attributes of the virtual compute resource pool.

### 8.7.3.2 ReservedComputePool information element

#### 8.7.3.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedComputePool information element.

#### 8.7.3.2.2 Attributes

The ReservedComputePool information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.3.2.2-1.

**Table 8.7.3.2.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedComputePool information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                          | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|---|
| numCpuCores       | M         | 1           | Integer                          | Number of CPU cores that have been reserved.  |
| numVclInstances   | M         | 1           | Integer                          | Number of virtual container instances that have been reserved.  |
| virtualMemSize    | M         | 1           | Number                           | Size of virtual memory that has been reserved.  |
| computeAttributes | M         | 1           | ReservedVirtualComputeAttributes | Information specifying additional attributes of the virtual compute resource that have been reserved. See clause 8.7.3.3. |

| Attribute   | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                | Description   |
|---|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| zoneld  | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to ResourceZone) | References the resource zone where the virtual compute resources have been reserved. If not present then the reserved compute resources are not bound to a specific resource zone (see note). |
| NOTE: The ResourceZone information element is specified in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 005 [i.4]. |           |             |  |   |

### 8.7.3.3 ReservedVirtualComputeAttributes information element

#### 8.7.3.3.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedVirtualComputeAttributes information element.

#### 8.7.3.3.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualComputeAttributes information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.3.3.2-1.

**Table 8.7.3.3.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualComputeAttributes information element**

| Attribute                        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| accelerationCapability           | M         | 0..N        | Not specified | Selected acceleration capabilities (e.g. crypto, GPU) from the set of capabilities offered by the compute node acceleration resources. The cardinality can be 0, if no particular acceleration capability is provided. |
| cpuArchitecture                  | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | CPU architecture type. Examples are "x86", "ARM". The cardinality can be 0, if no particular CPU architecture type is provided.  |
| virtualCpuOversubscriptionPolicy | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | CPU core oversubscription policy in terms of virtual CPU cores to physical CPU cores/threads on the platform. The cardinality can be 0, if no particular value is provided.  |

### 8.7.4 Information elements related to Network reservation

#### 8.7.4.1 Introduction

The network reservation information elements encapsulate information about network resource reservations. A network reservation includes information about number of public IP addresses, network type, and bandwidth requirements. It can also include specific network ports for reservation. The network resource reservation includes information about a created reservation for a network resource.

#### 8.7.4.2 ReservedVirtualNetwork information element

##### 8.7.4.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedVirtualNetwork information element.

##### 8.7.4.2.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualNetwork information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.4.2.2-1.

**Table 8.7.4.2.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualNetwork information element**

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                   | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------------|---|
| reservationId     | M         | 1           | Identifier                | Identifier of the resource reservation.   |
| publicIpAddresses | M         | 0..1        | ReservedPublicIpAddresses | Information specifying the list of public IP addresses that have been reserved. See clause 8.7.4.5. |

| Attribute         | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                | Description  |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|--|--|
| networkAttributes | M         | 1           | ReservedVirtualNetworkAttributes       | Information specifying additional attributes of the network resource that has been reserved. See clause 8.7.4.3.   |
| networkPorts      | M         | 0..N        | ReservedVirtualNetworkPort             | List of specific network ports that have been reserved. See clause 8.7.4.4.  |
| reservationStatus | M         | 1           | Enum                                   | Status of the network resource reservation, e.g. to indicate if a reservation is being used.<br>VALUES: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RESERVATION_BEING_USED</li> <li>RESERVATION_NOT_USED</li> </ul>           |
| startTime         | M         | 0..1        | DateTime                               | Indication when the consumption of the resources starts. If not present, resources are reserved for immediate use.   |
| endTime           | M         | 0..1        | DateTime                               | Indication when the reservation ends (when it is expected that the resources will no longer be needed) and used by the VIM to schedule the reservation. If not present, resources are reserved for unlimited usage time. |
| expiryTime        | M         | 0..1        | DateTime                               | Indication when the VIM can release the reservation in case no allocation request against this reservation was made.   |
| zoneld            | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to ResourceZone) | References the resource zone where the virtual network resources have been reserved. If not present, the reserved network resources are not bound to a specific resource zone (see note).                                |

NOTE: The ResourceZone information element is specified in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 005 [i.4].

### 8.7.4.3 ReservedVirtualNetworkAttributes information element

#### 8.7.4.3.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedVirtualNetworkAttributes information element.

#### 8.7.4.3.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualNetworkAttributes information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.4.3.2-1.

**Table 8.7.4.3.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualNetworkAttributes information element**

| Attribute      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description   |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|---------|---|
| bandwidth      | M         | 1           | Number  | Minimum network bitrate (in Mbps).  |
| networkType    | M         | 1           | String  | The type of network that maps to the virtualised network that has been reserved. Examples are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"local";</li> <li>"vlan";</li> <li>"vxlan";</li> <li>"gre";</li> <li>etc.</li> </ul>  |
| segmentationId | M         | 0..1        | Integer | The segmentation identifier of the network that maps to the virtualised network that has been reserved, for which, the segmentation model is defined by the networkType attribute. For instance, for a "vlan" networkType, it corresponds to the vlan identifier; and for a "gre" networkType, it corresponds to a gre key. Cardinality can be "0" to cover the case where networkType is flat network without any specific segmentation. |
| isShared       | M         | 1           | Boolean | It defines whether the virtualised network that has been reserved is shared among consumers.  |

| Attribute | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content      | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------|---|
| metadata  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource. |

#### 8.7.4.4 ReservedVirtualNetworkPort information element

##### 8.7.4.4.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedVirtualNetworkPort information element.

A network port is a communication endpoint under a network.

##### 8.7.4.4.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualNetworkPort information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.4.4.2-1.

**Table 8.7.4.4.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualNetworkPort information element**

| Attribute | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| portId    | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifier of the network port that has been reserved.   |
| portType  | M         | 1           | Not specified | Type of network port. Examples of types are access ports, or trunk ports (layer 1) that become transport for multiple layer 2 or layer 3 networks. |
| bandwidth | M         | 0..1        | Number        | Bitrate of the virtual network port (in Mbps).   |
| metadata  | O         | 0..N        | KeyValuePair  | List of metadata key-value pairs used by the consumer to associate meaningful metadata to the related virtualised resource.                        |

#### 8.7.4.5 ReservedPublicIpAddresses information element

##### 8.7.4.5.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedPublicIpAddresses information element.

##### 8.7.4.5.2 Attributes

The ReservedPublicIpAddresses information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.4.5.2-1.

**Table 8.7.4.5.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedPublicIpAddresses information element**

| Attribute | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| networkId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Unique identifier of the network from which public IP addresses have been reserved. |
| publicIps | M         | 1..N        | IpAddress  | List of public IP addresses that have been reserved.                                |

### 8.7.5 Information elements related to Virtualisation Container Reservation

#### 8.7.5.1 Introduction

The VirtualisationContainerReservation information element encapsulates information about virtualisation container reservations, including (among others), virtual memory, CPUs, storage, and virtual network interfaces, as well as a zone ID.

## 8.7.5.2 ReservedVirtualisationContainer information element

### 8.7.5.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedVirtualisationContainer information element.

### 8.7.5.2.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualisationContainer information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.5.2.2-1.

**Table 8.7.5.2.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualisationContainer information element**

| Attribute               | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                | Description  |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------|--|--|
| containerId             | M         | 1           | Identifier                             | Identifier of the virtualisation container that has been reserved.   |
| flavourId               | M         | 1           | Identifier                             | Identifier of the given compute flavour used to reserve the virtualisation container.  |
| accelerationCapability  | M         | 0..N        | Not specified                          | Selected acceleration capabilities (e.g. crypto, GPU) from the set of capabilities offered by the compute node acceleration resources. The cardinality can be 0, if no particular acceleration capability is provided. |
| virtualMemory           | M         | 1           | VirtualMemory                          | Virtual memory of the reserved virtualisation container.   |
| virtualCpu              | M         | 1           | VirtualCpu                             | Virtual CPU(s) of the reserved virtualisation container.   |
| virtualDisks            | M         | 1..N        | VirtualStorage                         | Provides with information of the virtualised storage resources attached to the reserved virtualisation container.  |
| virtualNetworkInterface | M         | 0..N        | VirtualNetworkInterface                | Provides with information of the virtual network interfaces of the reserved virtualisation container.  |
| zoneId                  | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to ResourceZone) | References the resource zone where the virtualisation container has been reserved. Cardinality can be 0 to cover the case where reserved network resources are not bound to a specific resource zone (see note).       |

NOTE: The ResourceZone information element is specified in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 005 [i.4].

## 8.7.6 Information elements related to Storage reservation

### 8.7.6.1 Introduction

The storage reservation information elements encapsulate information about storage resource pool reservations. A storage reservation includes information about the size of storage, number of snapshots, and number of volumes. The storage resource reservation includes information about a created reservation for a storage resource.

### 8.7.6.2 ReservedVirtualStorage information element

#### 8.7.6.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedVirtualStorage information element.

#### 8.7.6.2.2 Attributes

The ReservedVirtualStorage information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.6.2.2-1.

**Table 8.7.6.2.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedVirtualStorage information element**

| Attribute           | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content             | Description  |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------------|--|
| reservationId       | M         | 1           | Identifier          | Identifier of the resource reservation.  |
| storagePoolReserved | M         | 0..1        | ReservedStoragePool | Information about storage resources that have been reserved, e.g. {"gigabytes": 1 000, "snapshots": 10, "volumes": 10}. See clause 8.7.6.3.  |
| reservationStatus   | M         | 1           | Enum                | Status of the storage resource reservation, e.g. to indicate if a reservation is being used.<br>VALUES:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RESERVATION_BEING_USED</li> <li>• RESERVATION_NOT_USED</li> </ul>    |
| startTime           | M         | 0..1        | DateTime            | Indication when the consumption of the resources starts. If not present, resources are reserved for immediate use.   |
| endTime             | M         | 0..1        | DateTime            | Indication when the reservation ends (when it is expected that the resources will no longer be needed) and used by the VIM to schedule the reservation. If not present, resources are reserved for unlimited usage time. |
| expiryTime          | M         | 0..1        | DateTime            | Indication when the VIM can release the reservation in case no allocation request against this reservation was made.   |

### 8.7.6.3 ReservedStoragePool information element

#### 8.7.6.3.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the ReservedStoragePool information element.

#### 8.7.6.3.2 Attributes

The ReservedStoragePool information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.6.3.2-1.

**Table 8.7.6.3.2-1: Attributes of the ReservedStoragePool information element**

| Attribute    | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content                                | Description   |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|--|---|
| storageSize  | M         | 1           | Number                                 | Size of virtualised storage resource that has been reserved.  |
| numSnapshots | M         | 1           | Integer                                | Number of snapshots that has been reserved.   |
| numVolumes   | M         | 1           | Integer                                | Number of volumes that has been reserved.   |
| zoneld       | M         | 0..1        | Identifier (Reference to ResourceZone) | References the resource zone where the virtual storage resources have been reserved. If not present, the reserved storage resources are not bound to a specific resource zone (see note). |

NOTE: The ResourceZone information element is specified in ETSI GS NFV-IFA 005 [i.4].

### 8.7.7 VirtualisedResourceReservationChangeNotification

#### 8.7.7.1 Description

This notification indicates a change in a virtualised resource reservation. Support of this notification is mandatory.

#### 8.7.7.2 Trigger conditions

This notification is triggered when:

- A resource reservation is being updated.

- A resource reservation changed due to changes in underlying resources that are part of this reservation.

### 8.7.7.3 Attributes

The VirtualisedResourceReservationChangeNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.7.7.3-1.

**Table 8.7.7.3-1: Attributes of the VirtualisedResourceReservationChangeNotification notification**

| Attribute              | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description  |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|--|
| changeId               | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Unique identifier of the change on the virtualised resource reservation.   |
| reservationId          | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifies the reservation being changed.  |
| vimId                  | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifies the VIM reporting the change.   |
| changeType             | M         | 1           | String        | Categorizes the type of change. Possible values can be related to an update of the reservation or a change in the resources part of the reservation. |
| changedReservationData | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Details of the changes of the reservation.   |

## 8.8 Information elements and notifications related to Quota

### 8.8.1 Introduction

The clauses below define information elements and notifications related to Quota. The quota information elements contain information related to quota of virtualised resources used for input and output in the Virtualised Compute, Network and Storage Resource Quota Management interfaces.

### 8.8.2 Information elements related to Compute Quota

#### 8.8.2.1 Introduction

The compute quota information elements encapsulate information about virtual compute resource quotas. The information elements contain details about number of instance cores, number of virtualisation container instances, size of virtual memory.

#### 8.8.2.2 VirtualComputeQuota information element

##### 8.8.2.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualComputeQuota information element.

##### 8.8.2.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualComputeQuota information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.8.2.2-1.

**Table 8.8.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualComputeQuota information element**

| Attribute       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| resourceGroupId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain.  |
| numVCPUs        | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of CPU cores that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of CPU cores has been requested to be restricted by the quota.  |
| numVclInstances | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of virtual container instances that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of virtualisation container instances has been requested to be restricted by the quota. |

| Attribute      | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content | Description  |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|---------|--|
| virtualMemSize | M         | 0..1        | Number  | Size of virtual memory that has been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific size of virtual memory has been requested to be restricted by the quota. |

## 8.8.3 Information elements related to Network Quota

### 8.8.3.1 Introduction

The network quota information elements encapsulate information about virtual network resource quotas. A network quota includes information about number of public IP addresses. It can also include specific network ports and number of subnets for quota.

### 8.8.3.2 VirtualNetworkQuota information element

#### 8.8.3.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualNetworkQuota information element.

#### 8.8.3.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualNetworkQuota information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.8.3.2.2-1.

**Table 8.8.3.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualNetworkQuota information element**

| Attribute       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description   |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|---|
| resourceGroupId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain.   |
| numPublicIps    | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of public IP addresses that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of public IP addresses has been requested to be restricted by the quota. |
| numPorts        | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of ports that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of ports has been requested to be restricted by the quota.                             |
| numSubnets      | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of subnets that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of subnets has been requested to be restricted by the quota.                         |

## 8.8.4 Information elements related to Storage Quota

### 8.8.4.1 Introduction

The storage quota information elements encapsulate information about virtual storage resource quotas. A storage quota includes information about the size of storage, number of snapshots, and number of volumes.

### 8.8.4.2 VirtualStorageQuota information element

#### 8.8.4.2.1 Description

This clause describes the attributes for the VirtualStorageQuota information element.

#### 8.8.4.2.2 Attributes

The VirtualStorageQuota information element shall follow the indications provided in table 8.8.4.2.2-1.

**Table 8.8.4.2.2-1: Attributes of the VirtualStorageQuota information element**

| Attribute       | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content    | Description  |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|--|
| resourceGroupId | M         | 1           | Identifier | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain.  |
| storageSize     | M         | 0..1        | Number     | Size of virtualised storage resource that has been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific size of virtualised storage resource has been requested to be restricted by the quota. |
| numSnapshots    | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of snapshots that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of snapshots has been requested to be restricted by the quota.                                  |
| numVolumes      | M         | 0..1        | Integer    | Number of volumes that have been restricted by the quota. The cardinality can be 0 if no specific number of volumes has been requested to be restricted by the quota.                                      |

## 8.8.5 VirtualisedResourceQuotaChangeNotification

### 8.8.5.1 Description

This notification indicates a Quota change in a virtualised resource. Support of this notification is mandatory.

### 8.8.5.2 Trigger conditions

This notification is triggered when:

- A resource Quota is being updated.

### 8.8.5.3 Attributes

The VirtualisedResourceQuotaChangeNotification notification shall follow the indications provided in table 8.8.5.3-1.

**Table 8.8.5.3-1: Attributes of the VirtualisedResourceQuotaChangeNotification notification**

| Attribute        | Qualifier | Cardinality | Content       | Description   |
|------------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| changeId         | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Unique identifier of the change on the virtualised resource Quota.  |
| resourceGroupId  | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Unique identifier of the "infrastructure resource group", logical grouping of virtual resources assigned to a tenant within an Infrastructure Domain. |
| vimId            | M         | 1           | Identifier    | Identifies the VIM reporting the change.  |
| changeType       | M         | 1           | String        | It categorizes the type of change. Possible values can be related to an update of the Quota.  |
| changedQuotaData | M         | 0..1        | Not specified | Details of the changes of the Quota.  |

## 8.9 Information elements and notifications related to Policy Management

### 8.9.1 Introduction

The clauses below define information elements and notifications related to policy management.

## 8.9.2 Information elements related to Policy Management Operations

### 8.9.2.1 Introduction

The clauses below define information elements related to policy management operations.

### 8.9.2.2 PolicyInfo information element

#### 8.9.2.2.1 Description

This information element provides policy related information. It contains the policy itself and additional information related to the policy.

#### 8.9.2.2.2 Attributes

The structure of the PolicyInfo information element shall comply with the provisions for the PolicyInfo information element as defined in clause 8.8.2.2.2 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 013 [6].

## 8.9.3 PolicyChangeNotification

### 8.9.3.1 Description

This notification indicates a change of an NFV-MANO policy related to operations of transferring policy, deleting policy, activating policy and deactivating policy.

Support of this notification is mandatory.

### 8.9.3.2 Trigger Conditions

The notification is produced when:

- A policy has been changed as a result of an operation of TransferPolicy, DeletePolicy, ActivatePolicy or DeactivatePolicy.

### 8.9.3.3 Attributes

The PolicyChangeNotification shall comply with the provisions in clause 8.8.3.3 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 013 [6].

## 8.9.4 PolicyConflictNotification

### 8.9.4.1 Description

This notification indicates a policy conflict is detected by the VIM. A policy conflict can include any conflicted monitored events, conditions or actions among two or more policies enforced by the VIM.

Support of this notification is mandatory.

### 8.9.4.2 Trigger Conditions

The notification is produced when:

- A policy conflict is detected by the VIM.

### 8.9.4.3 Attributes

The PolicyConflictNotification shall comply with the provisions in clause 8.8.4.3 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 013 [6].

---

## Annex A (normative): NFVI operation and maintenance policies

The activities of NFVI operation and maintenance (e.g. NFVI software modification) have impact on VNF instances running on top of those NFVI resources to be changed. To minimize the impact on the service continuity of the VNF instances, a set of constraints shall be applied during this process. Based on this set of constraints, different actions can be taken to mitigate the impact of the NFVI operation and maintenance on the hosted VNF instances.

The VIM and the VNFM shall support the constraints of NFVI operation and maintenance (as specified in clause 5.6 of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 010 [5]) expressed through NFVI operation and maintenance policies.

For creating NFVI operation and maintenance policies, the VNFM determines the NFVI operation and maintenance constraints applicable to virtualised resources and their groups, based on the applicable constraints provided e.g.:

- in the VNFD (e.g. NFVI maintenance info); or
- by the EM over Ve-Vnfm-em reference point through NFVI operation and maintenance policies. See Annex C of ETSI GS NFV-IFA 008 [i.6].

NOTE 1: There might be inconsistencies between the NFVI operation and maintenance constraints and the current placement and/or placement constraints of the virtualised resources they apply to because the resource placement which correlates with the NFVI operation and maintenance constraints can be influenced by NFVO and VNFM in addition to the affinity/anti-affinity constraints given in VNFD.

NOTE 2: If the VNFM subscribes to the notification related to virtualised resource changes from VIM, VNFM will receive notification messages of `VirtualisedResourceChangeNotification` from the VIM, which indicates the upcoming change of virtualised resources due to the impact of NFVI operation and maintenance.

NOTE 3: The EM can send constraints (if available) related to the NFVI operation and maintenance to the VNFM at any time, including when it receives alarms of virtualised resource changes from VNFM.

The VNFM converts the constraints into policies, which are then provided (e.g. created or updated) to the VIM via the `TransferPolicyRequest` message of the Policy Management interface over the Vi-Vnfm reference point (see clause 7.10.2).

The NFVI operation and maintenance policy(ies) shall include all the information needed to express the applicable constraints of the virtualised resource(s), or group(s) of virtualised resources (which may include the impacted virtualised resource(s)). From this information the VIM shall be able to establish the association between the NFVI maintenance and operation constraints and the virtualised resource(s), or group(s) of virtualised resources.

Whenever the VIM receives the NFVI operation and maintenance policy(ies), it verifies the constraints expressed in the policy(ies), e.g. checking the consistency of the constraints in the policy(ies) and the information it maintains for the targeted virtualised resource or the group of virtualised resources. In case of any conflict, the VIM responds to the VNFM with a `TransferPolicyResponse` message indicating the failure and any appropriate additional information. Otherwise it responds with success and stores the received constraints in order to apply them for an upcoming or the ongoing NFVI operation and maintenance as applicable.

In addition, the VNFM can delete, query, activate or deactivate the policy containing the constraints applying in NFVI operation and maintenance by using the existing operations (e.g. `DeletePolicy`, `QueryPolicy`, `ActivatePolicy`, `DeactivatePolicy`) of Policy Management interface.

---

## Annex B (informative): Bibliography

- ETSI GS NFV 002 (V1.1.1): "Network Functions Virtualisation (NFV); Architectural Framework".

## Annex C (informative): Change history

| Date           | Version | Information about changes  |
|----------------|---------|--|
| November 2018  | V3.1.2  | Reference baseline was ETSI GS NFV-IFA 006 V3.1.1 (2018-08) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(18)000886 - IFA006ed321 update of IEs related to PM interface for ETSI GS NFV-IFA 027 alignment</li> </ul>   |
| May 2019       | V3.2.2  | Base line version for ed331 created from published version 3.2.1   |
| July 2019      | V3.2.3  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(19)000543r2 - IFA006ed331 Descriptor support for VR management</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000545 - IFA006ed331 Remove definitions provided in NFV003</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000578 - IFA006ed331 Rel3Mirror Update parameter groupName</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000040r8 - IFA006 MegaCR FEAT03 NFVI MOD</li> </ul>  |
| October 2019   | V3.3.2  | Base-line version for ed341 created from published version NFV-IFA006 v3.3.1   |
| February 2020  | V3.3.3  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(19)000765 - IFA006ed341 8.5.9 measurementContext in ThresholdCrossedNotification</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000776 - IFA006ed341 Alignment of descriptions</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000861 - IFA006ed341 Editorial corrections</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000877 - IFA006ed341 consistency corrections</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000887 - IFA006ed341 relaxing PM subscriptions</li> <li>NFVIFA(19)000992r1 - IFA006 Improve wording left for protocol design stage</li> </ul>  |
| March 2020     | V3.3.4  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(20)000103r1 - IFA006ed341 sync to IFA005 work - correction on NetworkQoS</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000104r1 - FA006ed341 Fixes issues highlighted in NFVIFA(19)000942r7 except NetworkQoS</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000105r2 - IFA006ed341 Fixing Mismatch on Cardinality and Content type</li> </ul>  |
| April 2020     | V3.3.5  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(20)000155 - IFA006ed341 Modify content of attributes thresholdId and alarmId</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000159 - IFA006ed341 Fix Cardinality of attribute segmentType</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000161 - IFA006ed341 Fix the attribute related to public IP Addresses for ReservedVirtualNetwork IE</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000162 - IFA006ed341 Fix attribute typo numSubnet to numSubnets</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000186r4 - IFA006ed341 fix enum values</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000260 - IFA006ed341 - Fix Qualifier and Cardinality of ObjectSelection and PmJob IE</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000308 - IFA006ed341 - Fixing Qualifier for the attributes of AffinityOrAntiAffinityConstraint IE</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000309 - IFA006ed341 - Editorial change in PerformanceValueEntry IE</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000347r1 - IFA006ed341 draft review comments</li> </ul> |
| September 2020 | V4.0.1  | Release 4 initial draft version created from published version 3.4.1.  |
| September 2020 | V4.0.2  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(20)000499 - IFA006ed411 mirror of 393r5 Adding Trunk Resource Management Interface.</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000500 - IFA006ed411 mirror of 412r2 Updating Network Resource Management Interface.</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000501 - IFA006ed411 mirror of 430r1 Adding Query and Update Trunk Resource Interface.</li> </ul>   |
| February 2021  | V4.0.3  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(20)000769 - IFA006ed421 networkId in VirtualNetworkInterface (mirror of NFVIFA(20)000694)</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000899 - Release 4 mirror of NFVIFA(20)000828 IFA006 Correct a typo</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000915 - IFA006ed421 Mirror of NFVIFA(20)000851</li> <li>NFVIFA(20)000935 - IFA006ed421(Mirror of 718r3) Modifications in VirtualComputeFlavour IE</li> </ul>  |
| September 2021 | V4.2.2  | Release 4 initial draft version for ed431 created from published version 4.2.1.  |
| December 2022  | V4.3.2  | First draft for ed441 created from published version v4.3.1.   |

| Date           | Version | Information about changes   |
|----------------|---------|---|
| January 2023   | V4.3.3  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(22)000288r2 - IFA006ed441 Changing informative reference from MAN001 to NFV006</li> <li>NFVIFA(23)000028r1 - (mirror of NFVIFA(23)000024) IFA006ed441 Policy management alignment with IFA048</li> </ul>  |
| March 2023     | V4.4.2  | Initial draft version for ed451 created from published version 4.4.1.   |
| July 2023      | V4.4.3  | Implements following CRs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(23)000239r4 - Enh01.01 IFA006ed451 MegaCR</li> </ul> And following rapporteur actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed GS to GR for the ETSI GR NFV 003 reference in [i.1]</li> <li>Removed version of ETSI GR NFV 003 from [i.1], to keep it uniform with how NFV003 is referenced in other IFA GSs</li> <li>Corrected the NFV003 reference in NFVIFA(23)000239r4 from [i.2] to [i.1]</li> <li>Updated the table of contents</li> </ul> |
| November 2023  | V5.0.1  | Release 5 initial draft version for ed511 created from published version v4.5.1   |
| January 2024   | V5.0.2  | Implements following contribution: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(23)000837 - IFA006ed511 update content type of policy (mirror of 700)</li> </ul> And following rapporteur actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed the order of Annexes (Bibliography needs to be just before the Change History)</li> <li>Added attribution notice for openstack</li> </ul>  |
| March 2024     | V5.0.3  | Implements following contributions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(24)000032 - (mirror (23)711) IFA006ed511 FEAT28 add reference to IFA045</li> <li>NFVIFA(24)000052r1 - FEAT19b IFA006 augmenting attributes for TrunkSupport IE</li> <li>NFVIFA(24)000188 - FEAT29 IFA006ed511 MegaCR</li> </ul> And following rapporteur actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changed 'Or-Vi' to 'Vi-Vnfm' in clause 5.3.3 while implementing contribution #188</li> </ul>   |
| April 2024     | V5.0.4  | Implements following contribution: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(24)000250 - IFA006ed511 Multiple clauses Editorial and technical alignments</li> </ul>   |
| June 2024      | V5.1.2  | Initial draft version for ed521 created from published version v5.1.1   |
| September 2024 | V5.1.3  | Implements following contribution: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(24)000522 - FEAT19a IFA006 Adding container networking recommendations</li> </ul>  |
| October 2024   | V5.1.4  | Implements following contribution: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(24)000583 - IFA006ed521 Review contribution - adding reference to ResourceZone</li> </ul>  |
| March 2025     | V5.2.2  | Initial draft version for ed531 created from published version v5.2.1   |
| April 2025     | V5.2.3  | Implements following contribution: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(25)000022 - IFA006ed531 maintenance - caption fix</li> </ul>   |
| October 2025   | V5.3.2  | Initial draft version for ed541 created from published version v5.3.1   |
| November 2025  | V5.3.3  | Implements following contributions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NFVIFA(25)000286r1 - FEAT27 IFA006ed541 Time synchronization (mirror)</li> <li>NFVIFA(25)000317 - FEAT19 IFA006ed541 Recommendation conn.des.002 from IFA035 (mirror)</li> </ul>   |

---

## History

| <b>Version</b> | <b>Date</b>   | <b>Status</b> |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| V5.1.1         | June 2024     | Publication   |
| V5.2.1         | November 2024 | Publication   |
| V5.3.1         | August 2025   | Publication   |
| V5.4.1         | February 2026 | Publication   |
|                |               |               |